

# **FSC Russian National Office**

## **FSC FOREST STEWARDSHIP COUNCIL STANDARD FOR RUSSIAN FEDERATION**

FSC code:  
**FSC-STD-RUS-V6-1-2012 Russia Natural and Plantations EN**

Version 6-01

Pre-approved by the Coordination Council  
of the Russian National FSC Initiative  
December 25, 2007  
with amendments approved June 6, 2010  
with amendments approved February 28, 2012

Accredited by FSC International  
November 11, 2008  
with amendments approved October 8, 2012  
with amendments approved April 10, 2015  
Validity: October 08, 2016

## **Russian National FSC Standard**

Russian Forest Stewardship Council Standard. <FSC-STD-RUS-01 2008-11 Russian standard ENG>. Moscow: FSC Russian National Office, 2012.

© FSC Russian National Office, 2012

This document is developed by the FSC Russian National Office

Any reproduction in full or in part of this standard must mention the title and credit the publishers as the copyright owners.

No part of this standard may be reproduced or copied without the permission of the publishers.

**Russian National FSC Standard**  
**ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

The development of this standard has required coordinated efforts of many people. The following persons played the key role in the development of the document:

**Coordination Council of the Russian National FSC Initiative (2005-2010):**

V. A. Chuprov, Greenpeace Russia  
M. L. Karpachevskiy, Biodiversity Conservation Center/Transparent World  
A. V. Loginov  
M. V. Malkevich  
V. L. Polyakov and Ye. A. Merkulov, Central Committee of the Russian Forest Industries Trade Union  
A. E. Ryzhkov, Special Research Center for FSC Voluntary Forest Certification at the Moscow State Forest University  
V. V. Soldatov, Krasnoyarsk Regional Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification  
N. V. Strakhova, Pricebatch (Altay-UK) Ltd.  
R. V. Sungurov, NP Northern Center for Forest Certification

**Coordination Council of the Russian National Working Group (2010-2012):**

A. N. Barsukov, Tetra Pak Russia  
V. A. Chuprov, Greenpeace Russia  
N. M. Efimova, Kirov Center for Forest Certification  
O. A. Konyushatov, *Investlesprom*  
Ye. A. Merkulov, Central Committee of the Russian Forest Industries Trade Union  
Yu. A. Pautov, Silver Taiga Foundation  
M. S. Tysiachnyouk, Center for Independent Social Research  
T. O. Yanitskaya/E.G.Kulikova, WWF Russia  
E. V. Zabubenin, IKEA

**Members of the Russian FSC National Office or FSC Standard development Group:**

Yu. A. Pautov, Silver Taiga Foundation  
N. E. Prokazin  
V. V. Dmitriev, WWF Russia  
V. V. Tolmachev, Pricebatch (Altay-UK) Ltd.  
A. A. Volkov, NPO Promles  
N. A. Zubov, Socio-Ecological Union of Krasnoyarsk Kray  
V. E. Nikolaev, Moscow State Forest University  
T. V. Pavlyuchenko, Arun Sym Community  
S. V. Orlov, Ilim Pulp Enterprise  
M. S. Tysiachnyouk, Center for Independent Social Research  
T. O. Yanitskaya, WWF Russia  
S. Yu. Pautov, Mondi Business Paper Syktyvkar  
P. V. Trushevskiy, Forest Certification

**Timber companies:**

D. A. Popov, Mondi Business Paper Syktyvkar  
O. V. Rogozina, Stora Enso Forest Sector Russia  
V. V. Samoilov, Lesosyryevoe obespechenie  
I. V. Shamanova, UPM-Kymmene  
E. O. Sidorenko, International Paper

**Consultants:**

D. Zh. Kutepov, Tefra Consulting Center

**Participants of testing in Moscow Oblast (2001), Krasnoyarsk Kray (2002) and Primorskiy Kray (2002):**

E. M. Belyakova, Greenpeace Russia

### **Russian National FSC Standard**

A. Yu. Grigoriev, Social Ecological Union International  
G. J. Droste, GFA Terra Systems  
V. A. Zhuravlev, Yeniseyskiy Leskhoz, Krasnoyarsk Kray  
M. A. Katanaeva, Siberian State Technological University  
A. A. Krylov, Klinskiy Leskhoz, Moscow Oblast  
E. I. Orleneva, WWF Russia  
K. A. Pakhorukova, Social Ecological Union International  
E. A. Shevlyakov, Lesosibirskiy LDK No.1  
V. F. Shcherbakov, OAO Terneyles  
T. Specht, GFA Terra Systems  
A. Yu. Yaroshenko, Greenpeace Russia

### **National Office of the Forest Stewardship Council:**

A. V. Ptichnikov, T.O.Yanitskaya (since Oct. 2011)  
As well as M. L. Kreindlin (Greenpeace Russia), O. V. Ilyina (Karelian Regional Conservation Organization "SPOK"), A. A. Kulyasova and I. P. Kulyasov (both – Center for Independent Social Research), M. G. Kuchinskiy (Institute of Ethnology and Anthropology, Russian Academy of Sciences), M. A. Podvezennaya (Lomonosov Moscow State University) and K. Harris (Taiga Rescue Network)

# CONTENT

<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>PART 1. STRUCTURE AND CONTENT .....</b>	<b>8</b>
1. Specification of Scope .....	8
2. Standard Hierarchical Framework .....	8
3. Content.....	8
4. Scale and Intensity of Forest Management .....	9
5. Numbering.....	9
6. Translation .....	9
7. FSC Accreditation Date and Standard Effective Date .....	9
<b>PART 2. USE .....</b>	<b>10</b>
8. Certification Decision Making.....	10
9. Re-structuring the Standard for Use in the Forest .....	11
10. FSC Documents related to the process: (FSC-STD-60-006 Section 8).....	11
<b>PART 3. CHECKLIST FOR COMPLIANCE WITH THE RUSSIAN FSC STANDARD.....</b>	<b>12</b>
PRINCIPLE 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND FSC PRINCIPLES .....	12
PRINCIPLE 2: TENURE AND USE RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES .....	18
PRINCIPLE 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES' RIGHTS.....	20
PRINCIPLE 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS AND WORKER'S RIGHTS .....	26
PRINCIPLE 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST .....	32
PRINCIPLE 6: ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT .....	40
PRINCIPLE 7: MANAGEMENT PLAN.....	6160
PRINCIPLE 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT .....	6766
PRINCIPLE 9: MAINTENANCE OF HIGH CONSERVATION VALUE FORESTS.....	7274
PRINCIPLE 10: PLANTATIONS.....	7776
<b>ANNEXES.....</b>	<b>8483</b>
<b>Annex A. Basic Laws and Administrative Regulations in Forest Management and Environment Protection .</b>	<b>8483</b>
<b>Annex B. International Environment Agreements Ratified by Russia and Basic Conventions of the</b>	
International Labour Organization .....	8685
<b>Annex C. Protection of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi and</b>	
Biological Diversity Consistent with 6.2 and 6.3 .....	8988
Red Data Book of the Russian Federation .....	8988
Regional Red Data Books.....	9089
Other Legal Regulations on Protection of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Animals, Plants and	
Fungi .....	9392
Key Habitats Consistent with 6.2 and 6.3.....	9594
Guidance on Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants,	
Animals and Fungi.....	9796
Guidance on Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting.....	9897
Guidance on Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values Consistent with	
Criterion 6.3.....	10099
Guidance on Collection and Analysis of Information Permitting to Assess the Composition of Flora	
and Fauna and its Changes in Relation with Forest Management and its Purposes (Indicator 8.2.7)	
.....	101400
References on Red Data Books .....	102401
<b>Annex D. Protected Nature Areas .....</b>	<b>110409</b>
<b>Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests (HCVF).....</b>	<b>113412</b>
HCVF Classification .....	113412
Management of HCVF.....	113412
Key Requirements for HCVF.....	115414
HCVF, Representative Samples of Existing Ecosystems and Ecological Networks .....	131430
Monitoring of HCVF.....	132431
References on HCVF.....	133432
<b>Annex F. Indigenous Peoples.....</b>	<b>135434</b>
<b>Annex G. Glossary .....</b>	<b>139438</b>

**Annex H.** Certification Terms .....147~~146~~

## INTRODUCTION

*FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship* (2002) are an internationally recognized standard for responsible forest management. However, any international standard shall be adapted to national or regional conditions by taking into account various legal, social and geographic conditions in which forests of different parts of the world exist. In practice, it means that it is necessary to develop, in addition to *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship*, indicators with a set of measurable means of verification to evaluate forests at a level of management unit. The FSC standard of forest stewardship can be developed for the country as a whole or for its parts (regions).

*Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship* along with a set of national developed indicators and rules on the implementation make up a FSC standard of forest stewardship.

The Standard is approved by the Forest Stewardship Council International Board of directors. To be approved by FSC Board such a standard shall be developed in accordance with the procedures specified in FSC-STD-60-006 (V1-2) EN Process requirements for the development and maintenance of National Forest Stewardship Standards. The structure and content of such standard shall meet the requirements of FSC specified in FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship* (2002) and FSC-STD-60-002 (V1-0) EN *Structure and Content of National Forest Stewardship Standards*.

The Russian National Forest Stewardship Standard (hereinafter National Standard) was developed by the National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification in 1999—2007. In 2006, FSC International endorsed the Coordination Council of the National Working Group as the Russian National FSC Initiative. According to Russian legal requirements, the Russian National FSC Initiative's legal entity is registered in the name non-profit Regional Non-Governmental Organization *Society for Assisting Development of Natural Voluntary Forest Certification*. The Russian National FSC Initiative consists of nine members representing economic, environmental and social chambers, which are elected by the National Working Group.

The decision to develop the standard has been taken by the 2nd (Constituent) Conference of the National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification in Krasnoyarsk, 1999. In particular, the need to develop a national standard was prescribed by the Statutes of the National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification and the Program of the National Group and Coordination Council. The Technical Committee of the National Group was established to develop national interpretation of principles and criteria and other regulations. The Coordination Council was entrusted with responsibility for coordinating the standard development.

The first version of the checklist in the FSC format was developed in 2000 based on Document 1.2 *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship* (version of January 1999) and *Position of Non-Governmental Organizations on Key Criteria for Sustainable Forest Stewardship in Russia* adopted by the meeting of NGOs held in Pushkino, Moscow Oblast, July 11, 2000.

The second version of the checklist was developed in 2001 after a broad consultative process with experts. At the same time, the decision on field testing of the standard was taken.

In early 2002, the third draft of the checklist was prepared, based on the recommendations provided by GFA Terra Systems certification company (Germany) during the field test in Klinitskiy Leskhoz (Moscow Oblast) and comments of FSC Secretariat. The draft checklist was discussed and adopted at the meeting of the Coordination Council of the National Group held in Krasnoyarsk in March, 2002.

GFA Terra Systems conducted the second and third field tests of the checklist at Lesosibirskiy LDK No. 1, Krasnoyarsk Kray, May 2002 and Terneyles Company, Primorskiy Kray, October 2002. Based on the outputs of the field testing, the fourth and fifth versions of the checklist were drafted. A number of Russian forest experts and auditors of GFA Terra Systems took part in the field testing. During the development of the standard, positions and opinions of regional working groups on forest certification were taken into account.

The Coordination Council of the National Group held in Moscow, November 1, 2002, revised and took as a basis the checklist (version 6). The decision on Principles 1–8 and 10 was

## Russian National FSC Standard

adopted by consensus, while Principle 9 was adopted by voting. It was decided to continue consultation to reach consensus on Principle 9.

In October 2003, the National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification developed *Standard Forest Management. Classification and Nomenclature of Attributes. Evaluation Procedure. Standard of Non-Governmental Organization. Draft Final Version. Version 1* based on the checklist (version 6).

The work of a special working group and discussions at the meeting of the Coordination Council on October 17, 2003, resulted in the adoption of the new version of Principle 9 by consensus. The draft checklist (version of December 16, 2004) was approved. The respective changes were made to the Draft National Framework Standard *Forest Management. Classification and Nomenclature of Attributes. Evaluation Procedure. Standard of Non-governmental Organization. Draft Final Version. Version 1*.

Since the Forest Stewardship Council has adopted the new content and structure for developing FSC standards – FSC-STD-FSC-STD-60-002 (V1-0) EN *Structure and Content of Forest Stewardship Standards* the Coordination Council developed the second version of the *Russian National Framework Forest Stewardship Council Standard. Forest Management Standard of Non-Governmental Organization. Version 2*. This version of the standard was adopted in general at the Conference of the National Working Group, May 26–27, 2005, Zvenigorod, Moscow Oblast. After taking into consideration comments and remarks, this version has been finalized (Version 3) and after discussion adopted by the Russian National FSC Initiative (the new name for the Coordination Council of the National Working Group after the endorsement by FSC International in 2006) in January 29 2007 (Version 4). This version of the Russian National FSC Standard took into account conclusions from the project aimed at harmonization of FSC forest management standards in the Baltic region in the 2005–2006. The participants of this project were National FSC Initiatives from Sweden, Germany, Finland, Estonia, Latvia, Denmark, Poland and Russia. The following FSC accredited standards were considered during the harmonization process: Sweden, Germany, Finland and Denmark. The project results were published (*FSC – Breaking the Borders. FSC certification and Harmonization of Standards in the Baltic Region*, 2006). The Russian National FSC Standard was finalized also with account for the National Boreal Standard of Canada (accredited by FSC of August 6 2004) – the extensive region being most similar in natural conditions to Russia.

FSC accreditation body (FSC ASI) has evaluated the technical and procedural requirements for the development of Russian National Framework Forest Stewardship Council Standard and their compliance with FSC technical and procedural requirements (ABU-REP-31-RU-2007-06-26, July 27 2007). FSC ASI as part of the accreditation process for the Russian National FSC Standard raised 3 preconditions, 9 conditions and 6 recommendations. In order to be endorsed by FSC the National Initiative will need to demonstrate compliance with all preconditions by January 01, 2008, while conditions shall be closed during 12 months after accreditation of the standard (November 11, 2008). Information on the procedure for finalizing the standard and comments from FSC ASI were delivered to 150 addresses, including members of the Russian National FSC Initiative, regional working groups, FSC certified companies, certification bodies and other interested parties on September 14, 2007. The special working group at the Coordination Council (CC) considered all received comments and prepared the final draft, which was once again made public sent out to all stakeholders November 23, 2007. The Russian National Initiative approved the Russian National Standard (version 5.0) December 25, 2007, and submitted it to FSC International. Some minor changes were introduced into the version of the standard accredited by FSC International November 11, 2008, hence the final version is called 6.0. Some conditions and recommendations raised by FSC International will be considered in the standard during the specified time and will be submitted for endorsement by FSC International.

The Coordination Council of the Russian National FSC Initiative will regularly assess its quality to develop proposals on its revision during the accreditation period of this standard.

From December 3, 2009, to February 3, 2010, the Coordination Council gathered proposals on clarifying standard requirements. From March 15 through May 15, 2010, standard revision proposals were open for public discussion. The amendments to the standard were addressed at the conference of the Russian National Initiative (National Working Group, NWG) on March 29-31, where they were ap-



### **Russian National FSC Standard**

proved in general. The new version of the national standard (version 7) was endorsed by the resolution of Coordination Council of June 05, 2010 and submitted to FSC IC for accreditation September 2010.

However, in 2011 some economic stakeholders from the Russian Far East and European Russia, which just recently joined or became active in FSC, declared a strong wish to contribute to the standard. The Coordination Council decided to consider these proposals and requested FSC to temporarily suspend accreditation of the standard. The final version of the national standard with amendments was endorsed by the resolution of Coordination Council of February 28, 2012 and sent to FSC IC on March 2 2012. FSC IC approved these changes on October 8, 2012.

The official full scale revision of the standard will be completed 6 months prior to the date of expiry of the standard at the latest. During two months upon announcement of the revision period the Coordination Council will collect proposals and comments from members of national and regional working groups, certificate holders, FSC members and other stakeholders.

The CC Working Group will summarize collected proposals and draw out a proposal-based revision paper. The list of proposals submitted and wordings suggested will be provided for open discussion for at least one month. The CC Working Group will summarize the comments received and develop a comments-based revision paper. CC may, if needed, decide to hold another round of open discussion. Based on the outcomes of the open discussion, CC will take decision on taking them into account in the revised version of the standard.

The national standard specifies nationwide requirements to forest management; establishes general rules for regional (subnational) forest stewardship standards; and serves for certification of forest management in accordance with FSC procedures.

The standard is applicable to forest management agencies, forest enterprises, organizations, audit companies operating in compliance with FSC rules and developers of regional FSC standards.

Russian National FSC Standard  
**PART 1. STRUCTURE AND CONTENT**

**1. Specification of Scope**

1.1. The Russian FSC Forest Stewardship Standard (hereinafter the National Standard) is applicable to the Russian Federation as a whole.

1.2. The National Standard specifies nationwide requirements to forest management, including the content of regional (subnational) standards of forest stewardship, in accordance with the FSC requirements.

1.3. FSC regional standards (hereinafter regional standards) can be developed within the frameworks established by the National Standard for particular regions of Russia (constituent entities of the Russian Federation (administrative regions or provinces of the Russian Federation, hereafter called administrative regions) or their groups). These regional standards will contain more detailed requirements to forest management taking into account regional features.

1.4. Regional standards shall be harmonized with the National Standard and regional standards of adjacent regions.

1.5. Regional standards come into effect after harmonization with the National Standard and accreditation in accordance with the FSC procedures.

1.6. In the case a forest management unit that seeks FSC certification is located in an area which has an effective regional standard the latter shall be used for assessing the forest management.

1.7. If a forest management unit seeking FSC certification is located in an area, which has no regional standard, the National Standard shall be used to assess the forest management, although taking into account relevant regional administrative regulations.

**2. Standard Hierarchical Framework**

2.1. The National Standard is structured as a hierarchy of the FSC Principles, FSC Criteria and the associated indicators and means of verification in compliance with FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship* (2002). The compliance with the National Standard shall be determined by evaluating observed performance at the forest management unit level against each indicator of the National Standard and in comparison with any given performance threshold(s) or outcomes specified for indicator.

**3. Content**

3.1. The National Standard includes the wording of each FSC Principle and each FSC Criterion in the same order as they occur in FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship* (2002).

As the basis, we used the translation of FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship made by the FSC National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification (under development) in 1999 (*FSC Principles and Criteria, Document 1.2*. In: *Materials of the Forest Stewardship Council, part 1*, National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification, Moscow, 1999). Found inaccuracies were corrected and the changes made to the authentic FSC standard by that moment were incorporated.

3.2. The National Standard does not use any additional criteria which are not part of FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship* (2002).

## 4. Scale and Intensity of Forest Management

4.1. Nowadays, there are no small private forest owners involved in forestry in Russia due to lack of private forest ownership.

Small forest areas (several hundreds of hectares) are quite rarely leased. Owing to the complicated administrative procedures and forest laws, long-term lease of such small areas is economically unprofitable and does not permit inexhaustible use of forest resource.

Due to unclear legal tools and procedures and low current demand for services and products of low intensity forest management organizations, there is no economically successful practice of such organizations.

In addition, the new version of the Forest Code, which came into effect in 2007, required serious re-working of the forestry regulations, which is still underway.

4.2. Therefore, the Russian National Standard does not contain any specific requirements or exclusions for small and low intensity forest management organizations (SLIMF).

## 5. Numbering

5.1. The numbering of the FSC Principles and Criteria within the standard is the same as FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship*, 2002.

5.2. The numbering of all indicators begins with the number of a respective FSC criterion for which the numbers of indicators follow one after another. For example, the first indicator for Criterion 5.3 is 5.3.1, the second 5.3.2 etc.

## 6. Translation

6.1. The National Standard was initially developed in Russian. However, for accreditation by FSC the Standard was submitted in English. Therefore, the English version of the accredited National Standard is considered definitive in case of any dispute. In case of disagreement on wordings of FSC principles and criteria, the text of FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship*, 2002 shall be definitive. Only the accredited English version of the National Standard can be officially implemented in the field to ensure forest managers compliance with FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship* (2002).

## 7. FSC Accreditation Date and Standard Effective Date

7.1. The National Standard was accredited by the FSC on November 11, 2008.

7.2. The period of validity of the National Standard is 5 years.

7.3. The 'standard effective' date is 12 months after the date on which the standard is approved by FSC, i.e. November 11, 2009.

7.4. However, the National Standard shall be used by certification bodies for all evaluations in Russia after the date of its accreditation.

7.5. Existing certificate holders shall be required to be in compliance with the National Standard by the 'standard effective' date, in order to hold an FSC certificate. This allows for a period of up to 12 months from the date of standard approval for existing certificate holders to come into compliance with the new requirements.

7.6. After the standard effective date the certification body shall require any non-compliance that is identified to be corrected in accordance with the normal requirements for major or minor non-compliances, as applicable.

## **8. Certification Decision Making**

8.1. Certification bodies shall make certification decisions based on their evaluation of the forest management organization's conformity with each indicator specified in the National Standard and related normative documents

8.2. All non-conformities that are identified by the certification body during an evaluation shall systematically be recorded in the evaluation report or associated checklists.

NOTE: non-conformities with requirements shall be recorded and addressed even if these are not in the specific focus of a particular evaluation.

8.3. Each non-conformity shall be evaluated to determine whether it constitutes a major or minor non-conformity at the level of the associated FSC criterion.

Note: A single Corrective Action Request shall not include requirements that relate to two (2) or more Criteria from the Standard.

Each non-conformity against other applicable certification requirements (e.g. FSC-STD-30-005 FSC Standard for Group Entities in Forest Management Groups) shall be evaluated to determine whether it constitutes a minor or major non-conformity at the level of the individual requirement.

Non-conformities shall lead to Corrective Action Requests, suspension or withdrawal of the certificate.

8.3.1. A non-conformity may be considered minor if:

- it is a temporary lapse, or
- it is unusual / non-systematic, or
- the impacts of the non-conformity are limited in their temporal and spatial scale and
- it does not result in a fundamental failure to achieve the objective of the relevant FSC criterion or another applicable certification requirements.

8.3.2. A non-conformity shall be considered major if, either alone or in combination with further non-conformities, it results in, or is likely to result in a fundamental failure:

- To achieve the objectives of the relevant FSC criterion or
- In a significant part of the applied management system.

NOTE: the cumulative impact of a number of minor non-conformities may represent a fundamental failure or total breakdown of a system and thus constitute a major non-conformity.

8.3.3. Fundamental failure is indicated by non-conformity which:

- continues over a long period of time, or
- are repeated or systematic<sup>1</sup>, or
- affect a wide area and/or causes significant damage, or
- is indicated by the absence or a total breakdown of a system, *or*
- is not corrected or adequately responded to by the client once identified.

**Notes:** Action(s) taken to correct a non-compliance may continue over a period of time (normally up to 1 (one) year, but in exceptional circumstances up to 2 (two) years). The certification body shall determine whether such action is considered adequate.

8.4. The certification body shall consider the impact of a non-compliance, taking account of the fragility and uniqueness of the forest resource, when evaluating whether a non-compliance results in or is likely to result in a fundamental failure to achieve the objective of the relevant FSC criterion.

---

<sup>1</sup> The certification body shall determine whether the number and impact of a series of minor non-compliances identified during sampling is sufficient to demonstrate "systematic" failure (i.e. failure of management systems). If this is the case then the repeated instances of minor non-compliances shall constitute a major non-compliance.

## **Russian National FSC Standard**

8.5. The certification body shall not issue or re-issue a certificate to a supplier if there is a major non-compliance with the requirements of the National Standard.

**Note:** If corrective action is taken in respect of a major non-compliance, such that the non-compliance no longer fundamentally prejudices achievement of the objective of the relevant FSC criterion, the major non-compliance may be downgraded to a “minor non-compliance”, and a certificate may then be issued or re-issued.

8.6. The certification body shall suspend or withdraw a certificate if a major non-compliance is identified after the certificate has been issued, and the certificate holder does not correct the non-compliance within 3 (three) months (or, in exceptional circumstances, 6 (six) months) of the non-compliance being identified.

**Note:** Action(s) taken to correct a major non-compliance may continue over a period of time, which is longer than 3 months. However, action must be taken within the specified period which is sufficient to prevent new instances of non-compliance within the scope of the certification.

## **9. Re-structuring the Standard for Use in the Forest**

9.1. The FSC-accredited National Standard may be re-structured by the certification body or the FSC National Initiative in order to facilitate implementation in the forest, or to make the standard easier for stakeholders to understand.

9.2. Restructuring of the National Standard shall have no effect on the requirements for compliance or decision making, and in the event of a complaint or appeal the complete standard, as approved by the FSC Board, shall be considered definitive.

## **10. FSC Documents related to the process: (FSC-STD-60-006 Section 8)**

*FSC STD 01 001 V4 0 EN FSC Principles and Criteria*

*FSC-STD-60-006 Procedure for the development of Forest Stewardship Standards*

*FSC STD 20 002 V2 1 EN Structure and Content Forest Stewardship Standards*

*FSC STD 01 003 V1 0 EN SLIMF Eligibility Criteria*

*FSC STD 01 003a EN SLIMF eligibility criteria addendum 2008 02 13*

*FSC-GUI-60-100 Guidance on the interpretation of the FSC Principles and Criteria to take account of scale and intensity*

*FSC-GUI-20-200 EN FSC Guidelines for Certification Bodies 2005*

*FSC POL 30 401 EN FSC certification and ILO Conventions 2002*

*FSC POL 20 002 EN Partial Certification 2000*

*FSC Guidance Document FSC-GUI-30-004: FSC Principles 2 and 3: Guidance on Interpretation*

*FSC GUI 30 001 V2 0 EN FSC Pesticides Policy Guidance 2007*

*FSC GUI 30 001a V1 0 EN Approved derogations for use of pesticides 2008 01 21*

*FSC POL 30 001 EN FSC Pesticides policy 2005*

*FSC PRO 01 004 V2 1 EN Processing pesticide derogation applications*

*FSC POL 30 602 EN FSC GMO Policy 2000*

*FSC ADV 30 602 EN Conversion of plantation to non forest land 2004 03 29*

*FSC ADV 30 901 EN Interpretation of Criterion 9 2 2003 04 28*

*FSC ADV 31 001 EN Interpretation of C10 9 2002 12 03*

## PART 3. CHECKLIST FOR COMPLIANCE WITH THE RUSSIAN FSC STANDARD

### PRINCIPLE 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND FSC PRINCIPLES

**Forest management shall respect all applicable laws of the country in which they occur, and international treaties and agreements to which the country is a signatory, and comply with all FSC Principles and Criteria**

<i>Criterion 1.1. Forest management<sup>2</sup> shall respect all national and local laws and administrative requirements</i>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification<sup>3</sup></b>
1.1.1. The organization shall be established or re-registered as prescribed by law	1.1.1.1. Founding documents. 1.1.1.2. Interviews with organization's managers
1.1.2. Organization's <i>forest management</i> activities shall be in compliance with laws  Guidance <sup>4</sup> : a) Hereinafter, forest management is interpreted broadly to include any forest management activity, e.g. conservation and restoration of biological diversity, providing recreational services, urban gardening, gathering non-timber forest products etc. b) Basic laws and administrative regulations in forest management and environment protection to be observed by the organization are listed in <i>Annex A</i> , including inter alia the Civil Code, which defines the list of founding documents, and labor and migration legislation.	1.1.2.1. Documentation (including protocols of governmental inspections); protocols of found violations of labor, migration, environmental, forest and water legislation, charges imposed on forest users; invoices and reports. 1.1.2.2. Interviews with staff <sup>5</sup> . 1.1.2.3. Interviews with local people <sup>6</sup> . 1.1.2.4. Field inspection
1.1.3. The organization shall keep up-to-date its legislative database including at least those referenced in the Russian FSC Forest Management standard.	1.1.3.1. Electronic collection of laws and regulations and/or subscription to official federal and regional periodicals containing such documents. 1.1.3.2. Interviews with organization's managers
1.1.4. The organization staff shall be informed of changes in legislation relevant to the organization's activity	1.1.4.1. Evidence of informing the staff of relevant changes in the legislation and administrative regulations
<i>Criterion 1.2. All applicable and legally prescribed fees, royalties, taxes and other charges shall be paid</i>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
1.2.1. The organization shall maintain a list of all applicable and prescribed fees, royalties, taxes and other charges to be paid with their due dates	1.2.1.1. List of payments, fees, royalties, taxes and other charges. 1.2.1.2. Statements of balance. 1.2.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers. 1.2.1.4. Interview with organization's accountant
1.2.2. The organization shall promptly pay all applicable and prescribed payments, fees, royalties, taxes and other charges as required	1.2.2.1. List of payments, fees, royalties, taxes and other charges. 1.2.2.2. Interview with organization's accountant. 1.2.2.3. Accounting reports.

<sup>3</sup> All verifiers are given only by way of example. Organizations and certification bodies may use other verifiers.

<sup>4</sup> Hereinafter, guidances are aimed to help forest managers and certification bodies to understand how to apply the indicator. Guidances offer examples of information sources and/or advise on practical aspects of meeting the requirements of the indicator. This does not mean that guidances contain a complete list of information sources and practical advice covers all variety of cases, they just demonstrate the spirit of requirements.

<sup>5</sup> Hereinafter, the staff shall be interpreted, when it is relevant, as forest workers and other staff of the applicant, as well as staff of subcontractors and any other organizations working under contracts with the applicant in the forest management unit being certified.

<sup>6</sup> Hereinafter, when interviewing local people it is necessary first of all to approach their major informal groups and NGOs (e.g. councils of veterans), not just local authorities (elder, the head of territorial public government ("samoupravlenie") etc.).

**Russian National FSC Standard**

	1.2.2.4. Tax inspector's confirmation of receipt
1.2.3. The organization shall pay all wages and salaries and other amounts prescribed by laws, regulations, forestry tariff agreements, collective and labor agreements to the staff promptly and in full	1.2.3.1. List of relevant payments to the staff. 1.2.3.2. Accounting reports. 1.2.3.3. Interview with organization's accountant. 1.2.3.4. Interviews with staff
<b><i>Criterion 1.3. In signatory countries, provisions of all binding international agreements such as CITES, ILO Conventions, ITTA, and Convention on Biological Diversity, shall be respected</i></b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>1.3.1. The management of the organization and the person responsible for certification shall be aware of the major requirements of conventions of the International Labour Organization relating to their forest operations, and <i>CITES Convention, Convention on Biological Diversity, Ramsar Convention, Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage</i> and bilateral agreements on environmental protection, International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights relating to the operations of the organization.</p> <p>Guidance: See the list of conventions and agreements in the area of environmental protection ratified by the Russian Federation on the website of the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation (<a href="http://www.mnr.gov.ru/part/?pid=388">www.mnr.gov.ru/part/?pid=388</a>) (see Annexes B and C). The above mentioned persons shall be at least aware of the agreements relating to the activities of the organization to the degree the agreements apply to them. According to the resolution of FSC Board, all certificate holders shall comply with ILO Conventions listed in Annex B and ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work (2001, <a href="http://www.ilo.org/public/russian/region/eurpro/moscow/info/publ/forest.pdf">www.ilo.org/public/russian/region/eurpro/moscow/info/publ/forest.pdf</a>)</p>	<p>1.3.1.1. Texts of conventions and relevant agreements ratified by the Russian Federation are available and accessible for the staff. 1.3.1.2. Administrative order by the organization to make the staff aware of relevant conventions. 1.3.1.3. Records of awareness activities (programs and lists of participants). 1.3.1.4. Interviews with staff</p>
1.3.2. Provisions of the international environment conventions and agreements ratified by the Russian Federation and ILO conventions consistent with 1.3.1 shall be observed during <i>silvicultural operations</i>	<p>1.3.2.1. Measures to meet the requirements of relevant conventions and agreements. 1.3.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) and/or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other documents. 1.3.2.3. Interviews with organization's managers. 1.3.2.4. Interviews with staff</p>
1.3.3. The organization shall not use forced labor	<p>1.3.3.1. Interviews with personnel managers. 1.3.3.2. Interviews with staff</p>

<b>Criterion 1.4. Conflicts between laws, regulations and the FSC Principles and Criteria shall be evaluated for the purposes of certification, on a case by case basis, by the certifiers and the involved or affected parties</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>1.4.1. The organization shall make a list of non-compliances between the national legislation and/or normative documents and the Russian FSC standard.</p> <p>Guidance: In this case the non-compliance may mean either non-compliance of FSC requirements with the requirements of the Russian legislation or the flawed legal framework hindering the fulfillment of standard requirements<sup>7</sup>. The Russian standard is the official interpretation of FSC Principles and Criteria</p>	<p>1.4.1.1. List and descriptions of non-compliances</p>
<p>1.4.2. All negotiations and consultations of organization's managers with relevant regulatory bodies, <i>stakeholders</i><sup>8</sup>, FSC and the certification body to resolve conflicts identified in laws and regulations thereunder in consistency with 1.4.1 shall be documented</p>	<p>1.4.2.1. Evidence of correspondence, protocols of meetings on conflict resolution.</p> <p>1.4.2.2. Internal procedures for resolution of identified conflicts between the legislation and FSC Principles and Criteria.</p> <p>1.4.2.3. Interviews with stakeholders</p>

<sup>7</sup> Hereinafter, representatives of the forest owners (government) shall be assessed on the basis of FSC-GUI-60-004 (page 21, p. 2.1): "...It is therefore essential that the manager has explicit authorization from the owner to manage the forest in compliance with the FSC P&C. In the case of concession [lease in Russia] systems the certification body must be satisfied that the manager has full authority to implement the FSC P&C in the concession area. It must be clear to the manager that if the owner imposes constraints which prevent implementation of the P&C, the certificate will be withdrawn."

<sup>8</sup> Hereinafter, all terms and notions shown in *italic* are described in Annex G. Glossary.



<b>Criterion 1.5. Forest management areas should be protected from illegal harvesting, settlement and other unauthorized activities</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>1.5.1. There shall be a system of measures<sup>9</sup> to reveal, document and prevent illegal and unauthorized activities on the certified area: illegal harvesting, illegal seizure of land (construction) and others<sup>10</sup>.</p> <p>Guidance: If applicable, the organization and auditor shall use materials of the remote sensing monitoring of the forest use within the <i>forest lands</i> performed by the Federal Forestry Agency. Results of the monitoring are available from relevant regional authorities</p>	<p>1.5.1.1. System of measures for revealing, documenting and preventing illegal and unauthorized activities.</p> <p>1.5.1.2. Register of records of illegal and unauthorized activities, including remote sensing monitoring.</p> <p>1.5.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>1.5.1.4. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>1.5.1.5. Interviews with relevant enforcement agencies at the federal, regional and district levels.</p> <p>1.5.1.6. Interviews with stakeholders.</p> <p>1.5.1.7. Field inspection</p>
<p>1.5.2. The organization shall implement measures consistent with 1.5.1 jointly with the relevant agencies<sup>11</sup>.</p> <p>Guidance: If enforcement agencies failed to undertake the required measures, the organization shall demonstrate that the enforcement agency was informed about the problem, while the organization is doing everything possible to solve these problems falling within its competence</p>	<p>1.5.2.1. List of users entitled to manage or use resources within the forest being certified.</p> <p>1.5.2.2. System of measures for revealing, documenting and preventing illegal and unauthorized activities.</p> <p>1.5.2.3. Register of illegal and unauthorized activities.</p> <p>1.5.2.4. Evidence of inspections by relevant enforcement agencies.</p> <p>1.5.2.5. Interviews with relevant enforcement agencies at the federal, regional and district levels.</p> <p>1.5.2.6. Interviews with stakeholders.</p> <p>1.5.2.7. Field inspection</p>

<sup>9</sup> In accordance with FSC-GUI-60-004, to meet any indicators requiring a documented procedure (program) or system, the implementation of such system or procedure and appointment of person responsible for it shall be demonstrated. The appointment of person responsible for compliance is one of the verification means.

<sup>10</sup> FSC requires that compliance with the standard be determined by evaluating observed performance at the *Forest Management Unit* (FMU) level against each indicator of the standard, and in comparison with any performance threshold(s) specified for the indicator. In this standard, FMU is understood either as a district level forest management administration unit (lesnichestvo, lesopark) (if the applicant is a government) or the area within such a unit leased by an organization (if the applicant is a private company). Hereinafter, all such FMU being certified by a particular applicant are collectively named "forest area being certified".

<sup>11</sup> Hereinafter, when the organization is not fully authorized to take measures with respect to activities of third parties within the certified area, indicators 1.5.2-1.5.4 recommended in FSC-GUI-60-004 shall be applied. They go that the organization shall take appropriate measures to prevent, detect and handle the illegal activities of third parties on the certified area within their competence and jointly with local competent authorities, local population, etc.

<b>Criterion 1.6. Forest managers shall demonstrate a long-term commitment to adhere to the FSC Principles and Criteria</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>1.6.1. The applicant for <i>certification</i> shall make a full disclosure of all forest areas over which the applicant has some responsibility, whether as owner (its authorized representative) or user (leaseholder, sublease holder, contractor, including timber sale ones) to a certification body.</p> <p>Guidance: Applicant for <i>certification</i> could be a big company, which seeks <i>certification</i> only for part of forest areas in which the applicant is involved whether as owner, manager or user</p>	<p>1.6.1.1. A list of forest areas (leases, forest management units (lesnichestvo) over which the applicant has some responsibility.</p> <p>1.6.1.2. Interview with stakeholders</p>
<p>1.6.2. When <i>certification</i> does not include all the forest areas in which the applicant is involved in accordance with 1.6.1, the applicant shall document the reasons for that.</p> <p>Guidance: Thus, the application for <i>certification</i> may not include forest areas in applicant's ownership, lease or management located in other countries or subjects of the Russian Federation provided they are managed independently. See further FSC Policy <i>FSC-POL-20-002 (2000) EN Partial Certification of Large Ownerships</i></p>	<p>1.6.2.1. Evidence of compliance to the FSC Policy <i>FSC-POL-20-002 (2000) EN</i>.</p> <p>1.6.2.2. List of all forest areas (leases, forest management units (lesnichestvo) over which the applicant has some responsibility.</p> <p>1.6.2.3. Written explanation of the reasons for seeking partial certification of large ownerships.</p> <p>1.6.2.4. Plans for further FSC certification, other written document justifying organization's decision to seek partial certification.</p> <p>1.6.2.5. Interviews with organization's managers</p>
<p>1.6.3. A written statement of long-term commitment to adhere to the FSC Principles and Criteria shall be available.</p> <p>Guidance: Russian FSC Standard is a national interpretation of the FSC Principles and Criteria</p>	<p>1.6.3.1. Written documents approved by organization's managers (socio-ecological policy or its main provisions, operating guidelines etc.).</p> <p>1.6.3.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan)</p>
<p>1.6.4. The applicant for <i>certification</i> shall demonstrate a long-term commitment to adhere to the FSC Principles and Criteria in all areas consistent with 1.6.1.</p> <p>Guidance: Russian FSC Standard is a national interpretation of the FSC Principles and Criteria. FSC members and applicants for FSC membership shall formally commit to do everything possible to achieve <i>certification</i> of all forests they manage within the reasonable time frame (normally this will not exceed 2 years). Applicants which are not FSC members or applicants for FSC membership shall at least demonstrate that the stewardship of the <i>forest lands</i> not covered by the <i>certificate</i> does not compromise the FSC's reputation, destroy trust to it and is not associated with illegal harvesting or associated trade, destruction of <i>HCVF</i>, violation of traditional and civil rights and planting of genetically modified trees and conversion of natural forests to <i>plantations</i> (see FSC Policy <i>FSC-POL-20-002 (2000) EN Partial Certification of Large Ownerships</i>)</p>	<p>1.6.4.1. Evidence of compliance to FSC Policy <i>FSC-POL-20-002 (2000) EN</i>.</p> <p>1.6.4.2. List of all forest areas (leases, forest management units (lesnichestvo) over which the applicant has some responsibility.</p> <p>1.6.4.3. Plans for FSC certification approved by applicant managers.</p> <p>1.6.4.4. Interviews with stakeholders.</p> <p>1.6.4.5. Interviews with applicant managers</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>1.6.5. When excluding (excising) areas from the scope of <i>certification</i>, requirements of FSC Policy <i>FSC-POL-20-003 (2004) EN The Excision of Areas from the Scope of Certification</i> shall be followed.</p> <p>Guidance: Above all, this applies to international FSC requirements with respect to the excision of areas from the scope of <i>certification</i> (item 2.2) and management of factors beyond the control of forest managers (item 3.1)</p>	<p>1.6.5.1. Evidence of compliance to FSC Policy <i>FSC-POL-20-003 (2004) EN</i>.</p> <p>1.6.5.2. Maps of all areas excised from the scope of certification.</p> <p>1.6.5.3. A set of management operations for these areas in lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>1.6.5.4. Interviews with organization's managers</p>
<p>1.6.6. The requirements of the Russian National FSC Standard shall be explained to staff</p>	<p>1.6.6.1. Evidence of employee awareness training to the Russian National FSC Standard (administrative orders on training courses, training programs, lists of participants).</p> <p>1.6.6.2. The Russian FSC Standard is available for the staff as information packages.</p> <p>1.6.6.3. Interviews with organization's managers</p> <p>1.6.6.4. Interviews with staff</p>

**PRINCIPLE 2: TENURE AND USE RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES**

**Long-term tenure and use rights to the land and forest resources shall be clearly defined, documented and legally established**

<b><i>Criterion 2.1. Clear evidence of long-term use rights to the land (e.g. land title, customary rights, or lease agreements) shall be demonstrated</i></b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>2.1.1. Documents confirming the rights to own the <i>forest lands</i> and manage or lease forest resources at least for five years upon the issue of <i>certificate</i> shall be in place.</p> <p>Guidance: If the actual term of the lease agreement as of the date of <i>certificate</i> issuance is less than 5 years, the organization shall provide documents confirming its intent to lease the forest area in question for another term</p>	<p>2.1.1.1. Certificate of state registration of the lease agreement.</p> <p>2.1.1.2. Documents confirming forest ownership or management rights</p>
2.1.2. The boundaries of the area shall be mapped and can be identified on site	<p>2.1.2.1. Maps with marked borders of the area.</p> <p>2.1.2.2. Field inspection</p>
<b><i>Criterion 2.2. Local communities with legal or customary tenure or use rights shall maintain control, to the extent necessary to protect their rights or resources, over forest operations unless they delegate control with free and informed consent to other agencies</i></b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
2.2.1. <i>Local communities</i> with legal or customary (including <i>traditional</i> ) rights to use forest resources shall be identified	<p>2.2.1.1. List of local communities.</p> <p>2.2.1.2. Maps.</p> <p>2.2.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>2.2.1.4. Interviews with local administration.</p> <p>2.2.1.5. Interviews with local people</p>
<p>2.2.2. The organization shall not restrict people access to forest, except for the purposes of fire or sanitary safety as well as safety in forestry works and emergency situations.</p> <p>Guidance: According to the Forest Code, Art. 11 all people have right to stay in forest freely and free of charge</p>	<p>2.2.2.1. Operating instructions and rules of behavior during periods of high fire danger and emergency situations.</p> <p>2.2.2.2. Organization's administrative orders.</p> <p>2.2.2.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>2.2.2.4. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>2.2.2.5. Interviews with local people</p>
<p>2.2.3. The organization shall not violate <i>legal</i> or <i>customary</i> (including <i>traditional</i>) use rights of <i>local communities</i> to the forest resources when managing the forest.</p> <p>Guidance: According to the Forest Code Art. 11 people have right to harvest and collect for their own needs wild-growing fruits, berries, nuts, mushrooms and other edible forest resources (forest food resources), as well as non-timber forest products</p>	<p>2.2.3.1. Administrative regulations with regard to these uses of forest resources are available.</p> <p>2.2.3.2. There are no grievances of local people regarding violation of their rights during forest management.</p> <p>2.2.3.3. Documents on protective forests<sup>12</sup> and special protection forest habitats<sup>13</sup> (OZU) around settlements (forest inventory materials) and areas traditionally used by local people.</p> <p>2.2.3.4. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>2.2.3.5. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>2.2.3.6. Interviews with local people</p>

<sup>12</sup> Hereinafter, categories of *protected forests* (former 1<sup>st</sup> Group Forests) where management is restricted.

<sup>13</sup> Hereinafter, forest habitats, where management is restricted, established in *protection*, exploitable and reserve forests, abbreviated *OZU*.

**Russian National FSC Standard**

***Criterion 2.3. Appropriate mechanisms shall be employed to resolve disputes over tenure claims and use rights. The circumstances and status of any outstanding disputes will be explicitly considered in the certification evaluation. Disputes of substantial magnitude involving a significant number of interests will normally disqualify an operation from being certified***

<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>2.3.1. The organization shall have a documented procedure for resolving disputes over the ownership and use of forest resources.</p> <p>Guidance: The use of forest resources may be implemented through the lease the forest areas</p>	<p>2.3.1.1. A written dispute resolution procedure.  2.3.1.2. Interviews with organization's managers.  2.3.1.3. Interviews with local authorities.  2.3.1.4. Interviews with local people</p>
<p>2.3.2. Disputes and grievances consistent with 2.3.1 shall be resolved through communication, negotiation or mediation. Legal procedures are used only if negotiations fail</p>	<p>2.3.2.1. A written dispute resolution procedure.  2.3.2.2. Register of disputes and grievances.  2.3.2.3. Protocols of dispute resolution commission meetings, other information of agreements reached.  2.3.2.4. Evidence of disputants following the agreements reached.  2.3.2.5. Interviews with district level forest management administration and/or relevant enforcement authorities.  2.3.2.6. Interviews with organization's managers.  2.3.2.7. Interviews with local authorities.  2.3.2.8. Interviews with local people</p>
<p>2.3.3. The organization shall maintain a record of all disputes and grievances consistent with 2.3.1 and the status of their resolution</p>	<p>2.3.3.1. A written dispute resolution procedure.  2.3.3.2. Register of disputes and grievances.  2.3.3.3. Interviews with district level forest management administration and/or relevant enforcement authorities.  2.3.3.4. Interviews with organization's managers.  2.3.3.5. Interviews with local authorities.  2.3.3.6. Interviews with local people</p>
<p>2.3.4. There shall be no <i>outstanding disputes of substantial magnitude involving different interests</i></p>	<p>2.3.4.1. Interviews with district level forest management administration and/or relevant enforcement authorities.  2.3.4.2. Interviews with local authorities.  2.3.4.3. Interviews with local people</p>

### PRINCIPLE 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES' RIGHTS

**The legal and customary rights of indigenous peoples to own use and manage their lands, territories, and resources shall be recognized and respected**

<b>Criterion 3.1. Indigenous peoples shall control forest management on their lands and territories unless they delegate control with free and informed consent to other agencies</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
3.1.1. <i>Indigenous peoples</i> <sup>14</sup> whose subsistence and cultural traditions critically depend on the use of resources within the forest area being certified and which declared themselves as such shall be determined	3.1.1.1. List of ethno-cultural indigenous groups and communities. 3.1.1.2. Documents and interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts confirming the tenure or use rights of indigenous peoples to the forest resources. 3.1.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers. 3.1.1.4. Interviews with staff of local educational and cultural institutions. 3.1.1.5. Interviews with local authorities. 3.1.1.6. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities
3.1.2. <i>Indigenous peoples</i> shall have access to information regarding the condition and use of forest resources within the forest area being certified (except <i>confidential information</i> ), in particular, concession borders, planned <i>silvicultural operations</i> , including timber harvesting and road construction.  Guidance: The procedure of consultations with <i>indigenous peoples</i> and consideration of their concerns (3.1.2–3.1.4) also applies to <i>local communities</i>	3.1.2.1. Indigenous people have access to forest management plans. 3.1.2.2. Interviews with organization's managers. 3.1.2.3. Interviews with local authorities. 3.1.2.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities
3.1.3. Forest area shall be leased in open manner	3.1.3.1. Publications about forest lease auctions are available. 3.1.3.2. Interviews with district level forest management administration
3.1.4. <i>Indigenous peoples</i> shall be informed about the lease of the forest area prior to the beginning of the procedure (e.g. through public hearings)	3.1.4.1. Publications about forest lease auctions. 3.1.4.2. Protocols of public hearings (if applicable), formal community wide gatherings of residents (skhod), other meetings etc. 3.1.4.3. Interviews with local authorities. 3.1.4.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and communities

<sup>14</sup> Hereinafter, indigenous peoples may in practice be represented by indigenous communities (obshchiny) registered in accordance with the established legal procedure, associations, unregistered indigenous residents groups etc. Interpretation of notions *indigenous peoples* and *traditional nature use* under Russian conditions see *Annex F Indigenous Peoples*.

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>3.1.5. There shall be a written agreement with <i>local indigenous people</i> on procedures to control <i>silvicultural</i> operations on sites where said <i>local indigenous community</i> (obshchina) owns or uses natural resources.</p> <p>Guidance: According to Art. 8 of the Federal Law <i>On Guarantees for the Rights of Small-numbered Indigenous Nations of the Russian Federation</i> (as of May 12 1999): “1. Small-numbered nations and organizations of small-numbered nations . . . have right: 2) to take part in control over the use of lands of various categories, which are needed for traditional management and manufacturing traditional crafts of small-numbered nations and common mineral resources in places of traditional dwelling and management of small-numbered nations...”. According to the Federal Law <i>On Traditional Nature Use Areas of Small-numbered Indigenous Nations of the North, Siberia and the Far East</i> special traditional nature use areas can be designated.</p> <p>The authorized representative of indigenous nations may be the chief (leader) of the local community, elected or appointed following the tradition. Several legally qualified indigenous communities may operate within an area. When checking the compliance with this indicator, the authority of indigenous communities representatives shall be verified, The agreement with the community shall be made in writing</p>	<p>3.1.5.1. Agreement with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities (soobshchestvo or obshchina).</p> <p>3.1.5.2. Evidence of correspondence and minutes of meetings with authorized representatives of indigenous people.</p> <p>3.1.5.3. Interviews with organization’s managers.</p> <p>3.1.5.4. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.1.5.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities</p>
<p>3.1.6. The organization shall have a written procedure mutually agreed with indigenous people for resolving disputes and addressing grievances of <i>indigenous peoples</i> consistent with 3.1.5</p>	<p>3.1.6.1. A written dispute resolution procedure.</p> <p>3.1.6.2. Interviews with organization’s managers.</p> <p>3.1.6.3. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.1.6.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities</p>
<p>3.1.7. Disputes and grievances regarding implementation of the agreements consistent with 3.1.5 shall be resolved through communication, negotiation or mediation. Legal procedures shall be used only if negotiations fail</p>	<p>3.1.7.1. A written dispute resolution procedure.</p> <p>3.1.7.2. Register of disputes and grievances.</p> <p>3.1.7.3. Protocols of dispute resolution commission meetings, other information of agreements achieved.</p> <p>3.1.7.4. Evidence of disputants following the agreements achieved.</p> <p>3.1.7.5. Interviews with district level forest management administration and/or relevant enforcement agencies.</p> <p>3.1.7.6. Interviews with organization’s managers.</p> <p>3.1.7.7. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.1.7.8. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities</p>
<p>3.1.8. The organization shall maintain a record of disputes and grievances of <i>indigenous peoples</i> consistent with 3.1.5 and the status of their resolution</p>	<p>3.1.8.1. Register of disputes and grievances.</p> <p>3.1.8.2. Interviews with organization’s managers.</p> <p>3.1.8.3. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.1.8.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities.</p> <p>3.1.8.5. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts</p>
<p>3.1.9. There shall be no <i>outstanding disputes of substantial magnitude</i> affecting the interests of <i>indigenous peoples</i></p>	<p>3.1.9.1. Register of disputes and grievances.</p> <p>3.1.9.2. Interviews with organization’s managers.</p> <p>3.1.9.3. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.1.9.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities.</p> <p>3.1.9.5. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts</p>

<b>Criterion 3.2. Forest management shall not threaten or diminish, either directly or indirectly, the resources or tenure rights of indigenous peoples</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
3.2.1. The organization jointly with <i>authorized representatives of indigenous peoples</i> shall assess the risk of direct or indirect impacts of forest management on the livelihoods of <i>indigenous peoples</i> , their rights and natural resources they use (e.g. water resources, wild-life and plants)	<p>3.2.1.1. Minutes of consultations with representatives of indigenous communities or minutes of meetings on forest inventory and planning (lesoustroitelnoe soveshchanie).</p> <p>3.2.1.2. Materials of impact risk assessment of forestry operations.</p> <p>3.2.1.3. Documented impact risk assessment methodology.</p> <p>3.2.1.4. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.2.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities.</p> <p>3.2.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts</p>
3.2.2. Management activities prescribed by the <i>forest management plan</i> shall not threaten or deplete natural resources used by <i>indigenous peoples</i> or violate their rights and deteriorate their livelihoods	<p>3.2.2.1. Materials of impact risk assessment of forestry operations.</p> <p>3.2.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>3.2.2.3. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.2.2.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities.</p> <p>3.2.2.5. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts</p>
3.2.3. Damage to natural resources on the <i>indigenous communities'</i> lands shall be compensated with account for the loss of natural resources (e.g. hunting, fisheries, berries, mushrooms, plants) or deterioration of their quality (e.g. water) on the basis of an agreement with the <i>authorized representatives of indigenous communities</i>	<p>3.2.3.1. Written agreements with indigenous peoples, protocols of meetings.</p> <p>3.2.3.2. Documented evidence of damage.</p> <p>3.2.3.3. Documented evidence of damage compensation.</p> <p>3.2.3.4. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.2.3.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities</p>



<b>Criterion 3.3. Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance to indigenous peoples shall be clearly identified in cooperation with such peoples, and recognized and protected by forest managers</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>3.3.1. The organization shall conduct consultations with local indigenous people regarding the presence of sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance to <i>indigenous peoples</i> within the forest area being certified.</p> <p>Guidance: Such information can be requested from Department of Culture at the district administration; rural settlement administration; regional history museums (of town, region, village); research institutes (e.g. Institute of Literature, Language and History, Russian Academy of Sciences; Committees for state conservation of cultural heritage. See also <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Categories of HCVF</i> and 9.1.5</p>	<p>3.3.1.1. Minutes of meetings, correspondence with indigenous peoples, local authorities and research and educational institutions.</p> <p>3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps.</p> <p>3.3.1.3. Interviews with specialists involved in conducting such consultations.</p> <p>3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities.</p> <p>3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts</p>
<p>3.3.2. Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance to <i>indigenous peoples</i> shall be identified in cooperation with them.</p> <p>See also <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Categories of HCVF</i> and 9.1.5</p>	<p>3.3.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>3.3.2.2. Evidence of consultations, list of identified sites and objects, including maps.</p> <p>3.3.2.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process.</p> <p>3.3.2.4. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.3.2.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities.</p> <p>3.3.2.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts</p>
<p>3.3.3. Sites consistent with 3.3.2 shall be mapped taking into account concerns of <i>indigenous peoples</i>.</p> <p>Guidance: Access to such maps can be restricted, if <i>indigenous people</i> consider that disclosure of detailed information on location of such sites could pose a threat to the existence or conservation of those areas</p>	<p>3.3.3.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>3.3.3.2. List of identified sites, objects and ranges, including maps.</p> <p>3.3.3.3. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.3.3.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities</p>
<p>3.3.4. Sites consistent with 3.3.2 in the absence of objections from <i>indigenous peoples</i> shall be marked on-site.</p> <p>Guidance: This is provided that <i>indigenous peoples</i> do not think that disclosure of information on location of such sites could pose a threat to the existence or conservation of those areas</p>	<p>3.3.4.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>3.3.4.2. List of identified sites and objects.</p> <p>3.3.4.3. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>3.3.4.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities.</p> <p>3.3.4.5. Field inspection</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>3.3.5. Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance shall be protected and/or shall have special management restrictions based on consultations with <i>authorized representatives of indigenous peoples</i></p>	<p>3.3.5.1. Written agreements with indigenous peoples.  3.3.5.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).  3.3.5.3. List of identified sites and objects.  3.3.5.4. Documents regulating the use or protection of the sites, including maps.  3.3.5.5. Interviews with staff.  3.3.5.6. Interviews with local authorities.  3.3.5.7. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities.  3.3.5.8. Field inspection</p>
<p>3.3.6. The staff shall be informed of the location of sites consistent with 3.3.3 and management restrictions therein</p>	<p>3.3.6.1. Interviews with staff.  3.3.6.2. Field inspection</p>
<p>3.3.7. Management activities threatening such sites shall be stopped or suspended until decisions are made and agreed with <i>authorized representatives of indigenous peoples</i></p>	<p>3.3.7.1. Claims of indigenous peoples to such sites and objects, cases of management suspension or relocation.  3.3.7.2. Protocols of meetings with authorized representatives of indigenous communities to resolve the disputes, agreements signed by representatives of both sides.  3.3.7.3. Maps.  3.3.7.4. Interviews with organization's managers.  3.3.7.5. Interviews with local authorities.  3.3.7.6. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities.  3.3.7.7. Field inspection</p>

<b>Criterion 3.4. Indigenous peoples shall be compensated for the application of their traditional knowledge regarding the use of forest species or management systems in forest operations. This compensation shall be formally agreed upon with their free and informed consent before forest operations commence</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
3.4.1. Rights of <i>indigenous peoples</i> for commercial use of their traditional knowledge and skills regarding the use of forest species or management systems in forest shall be recognized and if possible documented	3.4.1.1. Documents on traditional knowledge and skills of indigenous peoples and their commercial use. 3.4.1.2. Interviews with organization's managers. 3.4.1.3. Interviews with local authorities. 3.4.1.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities
3.4.2. The organization shall reach an agreement with <i>indigenous peoples</i> on compensation for commercial application of their traditional knowledge and skills regarding the use of forest species or management systems in forest <i>silvicultural operations</i> .  Guidance: The agreement itself and the size of such compensation shall be formally agreed upon with <i>authorized representatives of indigenous peoples</i> with their free and informed consent before forest operations commence	3.4.2.1. Agreement with indigenous peoples on compensation for application of their traditional knowledge and skills. 3.4.2.2. Interviews with local authorities. 3.4.2.3. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities. 3.4.2.4. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts
3.4.3. <i>Indigenous peoples</i> shall be compensated in consistency with 3.4.2	3.4.3.1. Agreement with indigenous peoples on compensation for application of their traditional knowledge and skills. 3.4.3.2. Documents of compensations paid to indigenous peoples. 3.4.3.3. Interviews with local authorities. 3.4.3.4. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and indigenous communities. 3.4.3.5. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts

**PRINCIPLE 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS AND WORKER'S RIGHTS**

**Forest management operations shall maintain or enhance the longterm social and economic wellbeing of forest workers and local communities**

<b>Criterion 4.1. The communities within, or adjacent to, the forest management area should be given opportunities for employment, training, and other services</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
4.1.1. The organization shall give employment priority to workers from <i>local people</i>	4.1.1.1. List of employees indicating places of birth and addresses. 4.1.1.2. Labor contracts and agreements. 4.1.1.3. Interviews with local authorities. 4.1.1.4. Interviews with staff. 4.1.1.5. Interviews with local people
4.1.2. Employment of workers from other regions of Russia and other countries shall be justified	4.1.2.1. List of employees indicating places of birth and addresses. 4.1.2.2. Labor contracts and agreements. 4.1.2.3. Interviews with local authorities. 4.1.2.4. Interviews with staff. 4.1.2.5. Interviews with local people. 4.1.2.6. Documents from the Migration Service
4.1.3. The organization shall not discriminate staff on the basis of their sex, nationality, religion and other characteristics with regard to employment, workplace and human rights issues	4.1.3.1. Workers' grievances regarding their discrimination. 4.1.3.2. Interviews with organization's managers. 4.1.3.3. Interviews with trade unions representatives. 4.1.3.4. Interviews with staff
4.1.4. The organization shall provide professional training and extension of professional knowledge and skills for the staff from <i>local people</i>	4.1.4.1. Records of training and extension courses for staff (course programs, lists of participants). 4.1.4.2. Documented professional skills. 4.1.4.3. Interviews with trade union representatives. 4.1.4.4. Interviews with staff
4.1.5. The organization shall participate in maintenance of the social infrastructure of forest villages.  Guidance: In this case forest village implies settlements where most of organization's forest workers live and villages ( <i>derevnya</i> , <i>selo</i> ) and single-rural settlements ( <i>khutors</i> ), both located within or adjacent to the forest area being certified and directly affected by organization's <i>forest management</i> activities (e.g. through exploitation of roads or forests traditionally used by <i>local people</i> ). Social infrastructure includes facilities of social importance (schools, kindergartens, polyclinics, clubs, hobby groups, libraries)	4.1.5.1. Evidence of participation in maintenance of the local social infrastructure. 4.1.5.2. Interviews with organization's managers. 4.1.5.3. Interviews with local authorities. 4.1.5.4. Interviews with local people
4.1.6. The organization shall provide assistance to the <i>local community</i> , increasing its life quality	4.1.6.1. Documents provision of assistance and services provided to local people. 4.1.6.2. Interviews with organization's managers. 4.1.6.3. Interviews with local authorities. 4.1.6.4. Interviews with local people

<b>Criterion 4.2. Forest management should meet or exceed all applicable laws and/or regulations covering health and safety of employees and their families</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>4.2.1. The organization shall have health and safety laws and administrative regulations.</p> <p>Guidance: The latter include technical regulations, interdepartmental and departmental safety regulations, interdepartmental and departmental template safety instructions, safety policy, equipment use and safety guidelines, construction rules and regulations and sanitary and epidemiological rules and standards</p>	<p>4.2.1.1. List of health and safety regulations.</p> <p>4.2.1.2. Availability of administrative health and safety regulations.</p> <p>4.2.1.3. Interviews with health and safety specialists.</p> <p>4.2.1.4. Interviews with staff</p>
<p>4.2.2. Legislative and administrative regulations on health and safety are available for staff</p>	<p>4.2.2.1. Interviews with staff.</p> <p>4.2.2.2. Accessibility of administrative health and safety regulations</p>
<p>4.2.3. Staff shall be familiar with health and safety rules</p>	<p>4.2.3.1. Health and safety training records.</p> <p>4.2.3.2. Interviews with health and safety specialists.</p> <p>4.2.3.3. Interviews with staff</p>
<p>4.2.4. The organization shall have a health and safety department or a respective specialist.</p> <p>Guidance: The number of personnel in the Health and Safety Department should correspond to the Interdepartmental regulations No. 10 <i>On Number of Health and Safety Personnel in Organizations</i> approved by the Ministry of Labor of January 22, 2001</p>	<p>4.2.4.1. Evidence of compliance of the Health and Safety Department with Order No.10 of the Ministry of Labor of January 22, 2001.</p> <p>4.2.4.2. Rules for the Health and Safety Department (when applicable) or terms of reference for the health and safety specialist.</p> <p>4.2.4.3. Interviews with health and safety specialists.</p> <p>4.2.4.4. Interviews with staff.</p> <p>4.2.4.5. Field inspection</p>
<p>4.2.5. The organization shall have certified working places</p>	<p>4.2.5.1. Materials on certification of working places.</p> <p>4.2.5.2. Register of health and safety training records.</p> <p>4.2.5.3. Interviews with health and safety specialists.</p> <p>4.2.5.4. Interviews with staff</p>
<p>4.2.6. Staff shall be given the opportunity to be involved in health and safety control at the organization.</p> <p>Guidance: A health and safety committee (commission) and other types of <i>administrative and public control</i> may serve an example of staff involvement</p>	<p>4.2.6.1. Register of records of administrative and public control.</p> <p>4.2.6.2. Interviews with staff.</p> <p>4.2.6.3. Interviews with representatives of workers council, trade unions or a public representative on health and safety.</p> <p>4.2.6.4. Interviews with those in charge of different levels of administrative and public control.</p> <p>4.2.6.5. Interviews with staff</p>
<p>4.2.7. Organization's managers and health and safety specialists shall be trained in consistency with requirements of labor legislation</p>	<p>4.2.7.1. Records of health and safety training of managers and health and safety specialists.</p> <p>4.2.7.2. Labor legislation.</p> <p>4.2.7.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>4.2.7.4. Interviews with health and safety specialists</p>
<p>4.2.8. Staff shall be trained in work safety measures.</p> <p>Guidance: Training should include instructing on health and safety, primary, recurring and unscheduled instruction and training at working place and instruction on first aid assistance for industrial injuries</p>	<p>4.2.8.1. Register of records of instructions at working place and admission to work with mandatory signatures of instructor and staff.</p> <p>4.2.8.2. List of professions and job positions, which do not require primary instructions at working place approved by the management and agreed with trade union committee and department (specialist) on health and safety.</p> <p>4.2.8.3. Interviews with health and safety specialists.</p> <p>4.2.8.4. Interviews with staff</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

4.2.9. Staff shall be tested on knowledge of health and safety requirements	<p>4.2.9.1. Health and safety training programs.</p> <p>4.2.9.2. Administrative orders to establish a commission(s) for checking health and safety knowledge of workers and protocols of checks.</p> <p>4.2.9.3. Certificates of workers on passing health and safety tests.</p> <p>4.2.9.4. Approved schedule for verifying health and safety knowledge.</p> <p>4.2.9.5. Interviews with health and safety specialists.</p> <p>4.2.9.6. Interviews with staff</p>
<p>4.2.10. Forest workers shall be provided with personal protective equipment.</p> <p>Guidance: requirements to the quality, quantity and replacement interval of PPE is determined by the current legislation (in particular, PPE shall have a state certificate, see Letter of Federal Tax Service Inspectorate in Moscow dated January 15, 2009 No. 19-12/001813), but these shall not be lower than the requirements of <i>ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work</i> and <i>FSC-POL-30-401</i></p>	<p>4.2.10.1. <i>ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work</i> and <i>FSC-POL-30-401 FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions</i>.</p> <p>4.2.10.2. Standard distribution of outfit and personal protective equipment at the organization.</p> <p>4.2.10.3. Records of distribution of outfit and personal protective equipment.</p> <p>4.2.10.4. Interviews with staff.</p> <p>4.2.10.5. Field inspection</p>
<p>4.2.11. The requirements of health and safety regulations, including the use of relevant tools and machines and work clothing and personal protective equipment in accordance with Table 1 of <i>ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work</i> (2001) shall be adhered to by the staff.</p> <p>Guidance: Forests in some Russia's administrative regions are affected by Chernobyl Radioactive Trace (1986 г.) and Eastern Ural Radioactive Trace (PO Mayak 1949-1967). Commercial timber harvest is prohibited at certain levels of radioactive contamination with <sup>15</sup>, while timber may pose a threat to the health of loggers and buyers (Order of the Federal Forestry Agency of March 16, 2009 No. 81 Methodical Guidelines on Forest Management Activities in Forests Contaminated with Radionuclides; <a href="http://www.rosleshoz.gov.ru/docs/-leshoz/80/Prikaz_81_ot_16_marta_2009_g..pdf">www.rosleshoz.gov.ru/docs/-leshoz/80/Prikaz_81_ot_16_marta_2009_g..pdf</a>)</p>	<p>4.2.11.1. <i>ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work</i> and <i>FSC-POL-30-401. FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions</i>.</p> <p>4.2.11.2. Atlas of Cesium Deposition on Europe after the Chernobyl Accident (1998). Methodical Guidelines on Forest Management Activities in Forests Contaminated with rRadionuclides.</p> <p>4.2.11.3. Register of records of instructions.</p> <p>4.2.11.4. Schedules of public and administrative checks.</p> <p>4.2.11.5. Protocols of inspections and technical checks.</p> <p>4.2.11.6. Prescriptions by enforcement agencies.</p> <p>4.2.11.7. Documented evidence on decisions made.</p> <p>4.2.11.8. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>4.2.11.9. Interviews with health and safety specialists.</p> <p>4.2.11.10. Field inspection</p>
4.2.12. Living conditions and nutrition of workers at felling sites shall be in consistency with the requirements of <i>ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work</i> (2001) and <i>FSC-POL-30-401 FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions</i>	<p>4.2.12.1. <i>ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work</i> and <i>FSC-POL-30-401 FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions</i>.</p> <p>4.2.12.2. Interviews with staff.</p> <p>4.2.12.3. Field inspection</p>

<sup>15</sup> Areas are considered contaminated with radionuclides if soil contains more than 1 Ci/km<sup>2</sup> caesium-137 or 0.15 Ci/km<sup>2</sup> strontium-90. Commercial timber harvest is prohibited if contents of Cs<sup>137</sup> and Sr<sup>90</sup> in soil are above 15 Ci/km<sup>2</sup> and above 3 Ci/km<sup>2</sup>, respectively. Permissible levels of Cs<sup>137</sup> и Sr<sup>90</sup> in forest products see Sanitary Rules SP 2.6.1.759-99.

**Russian National FSC Standard**

<b>Criterion 4.3. The rights of workers to organize and voluntarily negotiate with their employers shall be guaranteed as outlined in Conventions 87 and 98 of the International Labor Organization (ILO)</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>4.3.1. Organization's managers and staff shall be familiar with the main provisions of ILO Conventions 87 and 98 regulating workers to organize and to bargain collectively and voluntarily with their employers and relevant provisions of federal tariff agreements.</p> <p>Guidance: The main FSC requirements regarding observation of worker's right to organize and bargain freely with their employees are described in FSC-POL-30-401 <i>FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions</i></p>	<p>4.3.1.1. Texts of conventions, Federal Tariff Agreements of the Russian Federation for forest management and forest industries for 2007–2008 are accessible for workers at the organization.</p> <p>4.3.1.2. FSC-POL-30-401 <i>FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions</i></p> <p>4.3.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>4.3.1.4. Interviews with staff</p>
<p>4.3.2. Provisions of tariff agreements for forest management and forest industries regarding the rights of workers to establish organizations or join such organizations at their discretion without employer's prior permission as well as to voluntarily bargain with their employers shall be observed.</p> <p>Guidance: forest areas leased by institutions under the authority of Chief Inspectorate of Federal Penitentiary Service, Ministry of Justice (Corrective Labor Colony) are not subject to certification. As per Corrective Code (Ch. 14, p. 6): "Convicts are not allowed to stop work for resolving labor disputes". Thus, prisoners may not make full use of the right to bargain with employers in accordance with ILO Conventions No. 87 and 98</p>	<p>4.3.2.1. A trade union or other forms of workers organization is in place.</p> <p>4.3.2.2. Federal tariff agreements and a collective labor agreement.</p> <p>4.3.2.3. Reports on performance of the collective labor agreement and tariff agreements.</p> <p>4.3.2.4. Records of disputes and grievances as well as status of their consideration.</p> <p>4.3.2.5. Interviews with trade union representatives.</p> <p>4.3.2.6. Interviews with staff</p>
<p>4.3.3. There shall be no <i>disputes of substantial magnitude</i> involving employees and organization's managers</p>	<p>4.3.3.1. A dispute resolution procedure.</p> <p>4.3.3.2. Register of disputes and grievances as well as reports on resolution through meetings and negotiations etc.</p> <p>4.3.3.3. Reports on implementation of tariff agreements.</p> <p>4.3.3.4. Absence of evidence of pressure on employees, their discrimination or discharge related to their complaints against employees or participation in negotiations.</p> <p>4.3.3.5. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>4.3.3.6. Interviews with staff</p>

<b>Criterion 4.4. Management planning and operations shall incorporate the results of evaluations of social impact. Consultations shall be maintained with people and groups (both men and women) directly affected by management operations</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
4.4.1. The staff shall have an opportunity to give feedback regarding social impact of management activities and major management decisions (e.g. on employment issues)	4.4.1.1. Proposals by staff, protocols of consultations with stakeholders and workers representatives. 4.4.1.2. Interviews with staff
4.4.2. During management planning and operations <i>local people</i> and other <i>stakeholders</i> (both men and women) shall have an opportunity to give feedback regarding social impact of forest operations (e.g. <i>forest management</i> restrictions in certain sites, <i>silvicultural</i> and harvesting methods used, roads construction and maintenance and employment issues).  Guidance: With respect to <i>local people</i> 3.1.2–3.1.4 shall be also considered	4.4.2.1. Proposals by local authorities and local people, protocols of stakeholder consultations and minutes of public hearings, formal community wide gatherings of residents (skhod). 4.4.2.2. Mass media publications. 4.4.2.3. Interviews with local authorities. 4.4.2.4. Interviews with local people
4.4.3. Proposals consistent with 4.4.1 and 4.4.2 shall be considered on the basis of consultations between the organization and staff, <i>local people</i> and other <i>stakeholders</i> .  Guidance: When considering proposals, interests of the people and groups (both men and women) shall be equally considered	4.4.3.1. List of stakeholders. 4.4.3.2. Protocols and minutes of public hearings, formal community wide gatherings of residents, forest inventory meetings and consultations. 4.4.3.3. Correspondence with forest inventory enterprises and/or local authorities and other stakeholders. 4.4.3.4. Interviews with staff. 4.4.3.5. Interviews with local people. 4.4.3.6. Interviews with stakeholders
4.4.4. All submitted proposals and management's response thereto shall be available to the public	4.4.4.1. Protocols and minutes of public hearings, formal community wide gatherings of residents, forest inventory meetings and regular consultations. 4.4.4.2. Written conclusions of submitted proposals. 4.4.4.3. Interviews with local people. 4.4.4.4. Interviews with stakeholders
4.4.5. Proposals accepted in consistency with 4.4.3 shall be reflected in the <i>forest management plan</i> and organization's operating guidelines	4.4.5.1. Written opinion on submitted proposals. 4.4.5.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan). 4.4.5.3. Interviews with organization's managers. 4.4.5.4. Interviews with stakeholders
4.4.6. Proposals accepted in consistency with 4.4.3 shall be implemented during forest management operations	4.4.6.1. Written opinions on submitted proposals. 4.4.6.2. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders). 4.4.6.3. Interviews with organization's managers. 4.4.6.4. Interviews with stakeholders



<b>Criterion 4.5. Appropriate mechanisms shall be employed for resolving grievances and for providing fair compensation in the case of loss or damage affecting the legal or customary rights, property, resources, or livelihoods of local peoples. Measures shall be taken to avoid such loss or damage</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>4.5.1. The organization shall undertake preventive steps to avoid loss or damage to <i>legal</i> and <i>customary rights</i>, property, resources or livelihoods of <i>local people</i> caused by management activities.</p> <p>Guidance: Measures to take into account concerns of <i>local people</i> and reduce adverse impact on the environment and natural resources see 2.2, 2.3, 3.2, 3.3, 5.5, 6.2, 6.3 and 6.5</p>	<p>4.5.1.1. List of measures to consider concerns of local people and reduce adverse impact on the environment and natural resources.</p> <p>4.5.1.2. Protocols of consultations with local people.</p> <p>4.5.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>4.5.1.4. Interviews with staff</p>
<p>4.5.2. The organization shall have a written procedure for resolving grievances and providing compensation for loss or damage by management activities</p> <p>Guidance: Procedure for filing grievances and addressing compensation claims shall be clear and simple for the local people. Information on how to act in such cases shall be placed in public places (e.g. in the settlement administration building, a store, a club)</p>	<p>4.5.2.1. Procedure for resolving grievances and providing compensations for loss and damage</p>
<p>4.5.3. The organization shall keep a record of disputes and grievances regarding compensations for losses and damages and their status</p>	<p>4.5.3.1. Procedure for resolving grievances and providing compensations for loss and damage.</p> <p>4.5.3.2. Register of records of grievance resolution and compensation for losses and damages.</p> <p>4.5.3.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>4.5.3.4. Interviews with local people</p>
<p>4.5.4. Loss and damage claims shall be resolved through communication, negotiation or mediation. Legal procedures are used only if negotiations fail</p>	<p>4.5.4.1. Procedure for resolving grievances and for providing compensations for losses and damages.</p> <p>4.5.4.2. Register of records of grievance resolution and compensation for losses and damages.</p> <p>4.5.4.3. Protocols of conflict resolution committee meetings, agreements reached.</p> <p>4.5.4.4. Information on implementation by disputants of reached agreements is available.</p> <p>4.5.4.5. Interviews with district level forest management administration and/or enforcement agencies in the sphere of forest use.</p> <p>4.5.4.6. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>4.5.4.7. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>4.5.4.8. Interviews with local people</p>
<p>4.5.5. There shall be no <i>disputes of substantial magnitude</i> between the organization and <i>local people</i></p>	<p>4.5.5.1. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>4.5.5.2. Interviews with local people</p>

**PRINCIPLE 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST**

**Forest management operations shall encourage the efficient use of the forest's multiple products and services to ensure economic viability and a wide range of environmental and social benefits**

<b>Criterion 5.1. Forest management should strive toward economic viability, while taking into account the full environmental, social, and operational costs of production, and ensuring the investments necessary to maintain the ecological productivity of the forest</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>5.1.1. The organization shall have resources to implement the <i>forest management plan</i> and all associated management activities (in particular, harvesting, road construction, <i>silvicultural operations</i>, forest protection and monitoring, <i>HCVF</i> identification and protection and <i>key habitats</i>).</p> <p>Guidance: Such resources may be the resources of organization itself or resources provided by affiliated or partner organizations or resources provided by federal or regional budgets</p>	<p>5.1.1.1. Materials of economic justification of forestry activities.</p> <p>5.1.1.2. Economic analysis of fulfillment of the financial plan of the current and past years.</p> <p>5.1.1.3. Organization's financial performance (balance sheet).</p> <p>5.1.1.4. Financial plan.</p> <p>5.1.1.5. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>5.1.1.6. Independent financial audit report.</p> <p>5.1.1.7. Written commitment of affiliated or partner organizations to allocate funds on management activities</p>
<p>5.1.2. The management activities shall be economically sustainable and capable of providing a level of investment sufficient to ensure the survival of the organization in <i>long term perspective</i>, while taking into account all environmental, social and operational expenditures</p>	<p>5.1.2.1. Financial plan.</p> <p>5.1.2.2. Economic analysis of fulfillment of the financial plan.</p> <p>5.1.2.3. Organization's balance sheet or financial performance.</p> <p>5.1.2.4. Organization's plans to enhance revenues/profitability and reduce costs.</p> <p>5.1.2.5. Interviews with organization's managers</p>
<p>5.1.3. The organization shall allocate funds for <i>silvicultural</i>, fire protection and <i>forest regeneration operations</i> sufficient to implement the <i>forest management plan</i></p>	<p>5.1.3.1. Financial plan and other documents.</p> <p>5.1.3.2. Economic analysis of fulfillment of the financial plan.</p> <p>5.1.3.3. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.1.3.4. Field inspection</p>

<b>Criterion 5.2. Forest management and marketing operations should encourage the optimal use and local processing of the forest's diversity of products</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>5.2.1. The organization shall seek the best economic use of forest resources, taking into account its financial and technical possibilities.</p> <p>Guidance: Such activity may include marketing of various products, product sorting and grade recovery of harvested timber as well as its processing</p>	<p>5.2.1.1. List and volumes of different kinds of products supplied.</p> <p>5.2.1.2. List of organization's buyers.</p> <p>5.2.1.3. Documented trend over recent years of kinds and volumes of products obtained by different grades.</p> <p>5.2.1.4. Documented trend over recent years of sales in value by product.</p> <p>5.2.1.5. Evidence of organization's efforts to develop new markets for forest products.</p> <p>5.2.1.6. Interviews with organization's managers</p>
<p>5.2.2. The organization shall process harvested forest resources or delivers the resources to local or regional wood processing organizations, if this is economically and technically justified</p>	<p>5.2.2.1. Records of product sales.</p> <p>5.2.2.2. List of buyers of organization's products.</p> <p>5.2.2.3. Documents on change in types and volumes of products by category over the past years.</p> <p>5.2.2.4. Record of change in types and volumes of products by category in recent years.</p> <p>5.2.2.5. Evidence of the organization's efforts to increase the share of self-processing and/or the share of local/regional buyers of wood products.</p> <p>5.2.2.6. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>5.2.2.7. Interviews with local wood processors</p>

<b>Criterion 5.3. Forest management should minimize waste associated with harvesting and on-site processing operations and avoid damage to other forest resources</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>5.3.1. The organization shall use all merchantable harvested wood.</p> <p>Guidance: Some merchantable trees shall be retained to maintain biological diversity and ensure <i>forest regeneration</i> and patchiness of forest environment. See 6.2 and 6.3 and <i>Annex C</i>, section <i>Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi</i></p>	<p>5.3.1.1. Data on harvesting, use and sales of merchantable timber over the past years</p> <p>5.3.1.2. Evidence of the use of low quality timber.</p> <p>5.3.1.3. List of measures on biodiversity protection and forest regeneration.</p> <p>5.3.1.4. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>5.3.1.5. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.3.2. The organization shall utilize cutting waste (small diameter stems, snags, short cuts, wood dust etc.) and products of their on-site processing (e.g. chips) if it is economical and technically justified and under condition that this does not exert adverse implications on forest productivity, biodiversity, and <i>forest regeneration</i>.</p> <p>Guidance: The use of slashed residues see 6.3.13 and 6.3.14, requirements on deadwood and stumps see 6.3.10. See also Criterion 6.2 and <i>Annex C</i>, section <i>Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Endangered and Threatened Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi</i></p>	<p>5.3.2.1. Levels of waste production approved by organization's management, relevant manuals.</p> <p>5.3.2.2. Data on waste production and their dynamics over the past years.</p> <p>5.3.2.3. Evidence of the use of waste and low quality timber.</p> <p>5.3.2.4. List of measures on biodiversity protection and forest regeneration.</p> <p>5.3.2.5. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>5.3.2.6. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>5.3.2.7. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.3.3. <i>Forest management</i> operations shall not lead to the unjustified damage to <i>key habitats</i> being left, the residual trees and their groups (young growth and seed trees and other <i>key stand elements</i>), as well as trees being left for future harvest</p>	<p>5.3.3.1. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</p> <p>5.3.3.2. List of measures for biodiversity protection and forest regeneration.</p> <p>5.3.3.3. Relevant administrative regulations.</p> <p>5.3.3.4. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>5.3.3.5. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>5.3.3.6. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.3.4. <i>Silvicultural operations</i> do not lead to complete or partial destruction of sites of special significance for maintenance and reproduction of other forest resources (recreation, water, soil, fisheries, mushrooms, berries etc.).</p> <p>Guidance: See also 5.5.6, 6.2.6–6.2.10 and 6.5</p>	<p>5.3.4.1. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</p> <p>5.3.4.2. List of measures to minimize damage to other forest resources.</p> <p>5.3.4.3. Interviews with local people.</p> <p>5.3.4.4. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>5.3.4.5. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>5.3.4.6. Field inspection</p>

<b>Criterion 5.4. Forest management should strive to strengthen and diversify the local economy, avoiding dependence on a single forest product</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
5.4.1. When planning <i>forest management</i> the organization shall explore technical and financial feasibility of production of a range of forest goods and services	<p>5.4.1.1. Findings of the feasibility study of production of a range of goods and services, considering financial and technical limitations, the structure of supply and demand and their potential change in future.</p> <p>5.4.1.2. Evidence of organization's efforts to develop new markets and produce a range of goods and services.</p> <p>5.4.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers</p>
<p>5.4.2. The organization shall expand the range of goods and services delivered to the market, including those demanded in the local market if economically practical.</p> <p>Guidance: In some administrative regions of the Russian Federation, regional authorities could implement a program to encourage diversification of production</p>	<p>5.4.2.1. List and volumes of offered products by category.</p> <p>5.4.2.2. List of organization's buyers.</p> <p>5.4.2.3. Change in kinds and volumes of products by category over recent years.</p> <p>5.4.2.4. Participation in the regional program for diversification of production.</p> <p>5.4.2.5. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>5.4.2.6. Interviews with local product buyers</p>
<p>5.4.3. The organization shall not prevent the development of different kinds of forest use (e.g. collection of mushrooms and berries, hunting, recreation) within the forest area being certified.</p> <p>Guidance: Local economy is more stable if various forest resources are legally used for different purposes including commercial ones</p>	<p>5.4.3.1. Documents permitting the use of forest.</p> <p>5.4.3.2. List of types of forest use.</p> <p>5.4.3.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>5.4.3.4. Interviews with local authorities.</p> <p>5.4.3.5. Interviews with local people</p>

<b>Criterion 5.5. Forest management operations shall recognize, maintain, and, where appropriate, enhance the value of forest services and resources such as watersheds and fisheries</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>5.5.1. <i>Water protection zones</i> and shelter belts shall be established in territories adjacent to seas, rivers, streams, channels, lakes and water reservoirs.</p> <p>Guidance: The indicator refers to water bodies which are to have protective zones and shelter belts according to the federal legislation (Water Code). For protection or swamp (including forested swamps) boundaries and areas along intermittent watercourses, provisions 6.2.1-6.2.11, 6.3.5, 6.3.13 (conservation of <i>key habitats, habitats of rear and endangered species</i>, conservation of mosaic landscapes after clearcutting) shall be applied</p>	<p>5.5.1.1. Water Code of the Russian Federation, regulations regarding OZU.</p> <p>5.5.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.5.1.3. Maps with marked water protection zones (protective forests, OZU).</p> <p>5.5.1.4. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.5.2. The dimensions of <i>water protection zones</i> and shelter belts shall be not less than the size prescribed by the federal legislation, and a special regime of economic and other activities therein shall comply with or exceed the requirements set by the federal legislation</p>	<p>5.5.2.1. Water Code of the Russian Federation, regulations regarding OZU.</p> <p>5.5.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.5.2.3. Maps with marked water protection zones (protective forests, OZU)</p>
<p>5.5.3. The dimensions of <i>water protection zones</i> around areas of special significance for fisheries (spawning grounds, fattening and wintering of fish and other aquatic biological resources) shall be sufficient for their conservation</p>	<p>5.5.3.1. Water Code of the Russian Federation, regulations regarding OZU.</p> <p>5.5.3.2. Scientific evidence, including maps.</p> <p>5.5.3.3. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.5.3.4. Maps with marked water protection zones (protective forests, OZU).</p> <p>5.5.3.5. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.5.4. <i>Water protection zones</i> within the areas undergoing harvest operations shall be marked on site</p>	<p>5.5.4.1. Forest inventory materials with descriptions of individual stands.</p> <p>5.5.4.2. Maps with marked water protection zones (protective forests, OZU).</p> <p>5.5.4.3. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.5.5. Wetlands shall be drained only if this is required for restoration of their natural hydrological regime</p>	<p>5.5.5.1. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.5.5.2. Documents of forest reclamation works.</p> <p>5.5.5.3. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.5.6. <i>Silvicultural operations</i> within <i>water protection zones</i> of all types (<i>protective forests</i> and <i>OZU</i>) shall not undermine the environmental functions of these territories.</p> <p>Guidance: See 8.2.9–8.2.11</p>	<p>5.5.6.1. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.5.6.2. Plan of silvicultural operations with maps.</p> <p>5.5.6.3. Findings of monitoring (see Criterion 8.2).</p> <p>5.5.6.4. Interviews with local people.</p> <p>5.5.6.5. Interview with fishery inspector.</p> <p>5.5.6.6. Interview with water resources inspector (Rosvodnadzor).</p> <p>5.5.6.7. Interview with protection and/or supervision agencies in the sphere of management of natural resources.</p> <p>5.5.6.8. Field inspection</p>

### Russian National FSC Standard

<p>5.5.7. <i>Silvicultural operations</i> shall not lead to erosion and paludification of soils</p>	<p>5.5.7.1. Records of monitoring of the impact of forest management consistent with 8.2, results of research. 5.5.7.2. Interviews with stakeholders. 5.5.7.3. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.5.8. Forest management activities shall not diminish water protective functions of forests around watersheds within the forest area being certified: water quality due to pollution, suspended load or eutrophication and the hydrological regime</p> <p>Guidance: This indicator is to be assessed, first of all, from the point of view of assessment of organization's management activities for quality and availability of drinking water</p>	<p>5.5.8.1. Records of monitoring of the impact of forest management consistent with 8.2. 5.5.8.2. Interviews with local people. 5.5.8.3. Interviews with stakeholders. 5.5.8.4. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.5.9. Forest management activities shall not limit the accessibility of non-timber forest products (game, fish, berries and mushrooms) for <i>local people</i>.</p> <p>Guidance: For the purpose of this indicator, availability is understood, inter alia, as a free access to the said resource (including absence of entanglement, except cases provided by the legislation and technical regulations, maintenance of footpaths on cutovers)</p>	<p>5.5.9.1. Records of monitoring of the impact of forest management consistent with 8.2. 5.5.9.2. Interviews with local people. 5.5.9.3. Interviews with stakeholders</p>

<b>Criterion 5.6. The rates of harvest of forest products shall not exceed levels which can be permanently sustained</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>5.6.1. The <i>annual allowable cut</i> (AAC) for the leased area shall be determined for forest areas depending on their management purposes, for, <i>management sections</i> and for cutting types (clearcut, selective cuts).</p> <p>Guidance: The total planned <i>harvest level</i> shall include timber obtained from all cutting types (including <i>silvicultural operations</i> and salvage logging). They should be revised when necessary considering losses of merchantable timber due to fires, forest diseases, outbreaks of phytophagous invertebrates and mass windfalls</p>	<p>5.6.1.1. Guidelines for determining AAC (raschetnaya leseka)/AAC for the leased area.</p> <p>5.6.1.2. Rational for the method for determining AAC for each management section, lease as a whole or its parts.</p> <p>5.6.1.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.6.1.4. Annual monitoring data.</p> <p>5.6.1.5. Interviews with organization's managers</p>
<p>5.6.2. The total planned annual harvest level shall be reduced if the applicable AAC for the leased area includes timber:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5.6.2.a: harvesting of which is prohibited or restricted by the regime of <i>protected sites</i><sup>16</sup>;</li> <li>• 5.6.2.b: harvesting of which is permitted but would not be possible due to economic inaccessibility or insufficient growing stock (<i>economically inaccessible forests</i>)</li> </ul>	<p>5.6.2.1. Guidelines for determining annual allowable cut (raschetnaya leseka)/annual allowable cut for leased forest area.</p> <p>5.6.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.6.2.3. Calculation of harvest level</p>
<p>5.6.3. The <i>annual harvest level</i> shall ensure the sustainable use in the long-term.</p> <p>Guidance: The <i>annual harvest level</i> as a rule does not incorporate requirements of 5.6.2 and presuppose fast <i>forest regeneration</i> on all cutovers, timely improvement cuttings in all forests where they are desirable and protection of planted forests against fire. Non-compliance with any of these requirements shall lead to reduction of sustainable yield level. Exceeding of the annual sustainable yield level is permitted in the <i>short-term</i> in general or by <i>management sections</i>, if this is determined by long-term management goals (reaching the desired proportions of management sections or age structure) or caused by natural disasters (fires, outbreaks of <i>phytophagous invertebrates</i>). The sustainable yield level of non-timber products shall only be calculated where harvesting is performed on large scale or violates <i>traditional</i> or <i>customary rights</i> related to the harvest of non-timber products</p>	<p>5.6.3.1. Lease agreement.</p> <p>5.6.3.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.6.3.3. Report on the annual harvest level.</p> <p>5.6.3.4. Graph showing planned (forecasted) annual harvest levels by management sections over the period greater than half of a rotation period (duration of long-term lease) in general and separately for economically accessible forests</p>
<p>5.6.4. The annual timber harvest shall be documented for each <i>harvest area</i> (leseka)</p>	<p>5.6.4.1. Records of harvest levels.</p> <p>5.6.4.2. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders).</p> <p>5.6.4.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>5.6.4.4. Field inspection</p>
<p>5.6.5. The technological map and/or other documents specifying the development of a particular <i>harvest area</i> (leseka) shall contain at least the following information:</p>	<p>5.6.5.1. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</p> <p>5.6.5.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov</p>

<sup>16</sup> Hereinafter, *protected sites* are understood as existing protected areas and candidate areas, *protective forests*, *relatively large OZU*, including candidate areas of ecological network and any areas voluntarily set aside for conservation by the organization.



## Russian National FSC Standard

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• location, including district forest management unit (lesnichestvo), forest group, numbers of blocks (kvartals), sections (vydels), <i>harvest areas</i>;</li> <li>• type of management operation (use);</li> <li>• type and technique of harvesting or type of resource harvested;</li> <li>• grade of harvested timber;</li> <li>• size of <i>harvest area</i>;</li> <li>• pre-harvest stand composition;</li> <li>• area at which young growth shall be retained;</li> <li>• AAC for the leased area in terms of timber and/or other forest resources;</li> <li>• indication which trees shall and shall not be harvested;</li> <li>• timelines for timber harvesting and removal from forest;</li> <li>• <i>non-exploitable areas (NEP)</i>, other retention stands/stand elements;</li> <li>• forest protection measures and their timelines;</li> <li>• method for clearing the <i>harvest area</i>;</li> <li>• peculiarities of harvesting techniques;</li> <li>• <i>forest regeneration</i> activities;</li> <li>• bays, industrial and household waste disposal sites;</li> <li>• waste removal/disposal operations.</li> </ul> <p>Guidance: Such information may contain in organization's internal documents</p>	<p>(forest management plan)</p>
<p>5.6.6. <i>Secondary forest uses</i> of the forest area being certified shall not lead to the depletion of secondary resources</p>	<p>5.6.6.1. Harvesting documents for secondary forest use.</p> <p>5.6.6.2. Interviews with district level forest management administration.</p> <p>5.6.6.3. Interviews with staff</p> <p>5.6.6.4. Interviews with local people.</p> <p>5.6.6.5. Field inspection</p>

**PRINCIPLE 6: ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT**

**Forest management shall conserve biological diversity and its associated values, water resources, soils, and unique and fragile ecosystems and landscapes and, by so doing, maintain the ecological functions and the integrity of the forest**

*Criterion 6.1. Assessments of environmental impacts shall be completed – appropriate to the scale, intensity of forest management and the uniqueness of the affected resources – and adequately integrated into management systems. Assessments shall include landscape level considerations as well as the impacts of on-site processing facilities. Environmental impacts shall be assessed prior to commencement of site-disturbing operations*

<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
6.1.1. The <i>environmental impact assessment (OVOS)</i> <sup>17</sup> of the planned activities shall be performed	6.1.1.1. Materials of OVOS and/or ecological or state expertise (EE). 6.1.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 6.1.1.3. Interviews with organization's specialists
6.1.2. OVOS materials shall describe the planned activities <sup>18</sup> being the source of environmental impact	6.1.2.1. Materials of OVOS and/or EE. 6.1.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) and/or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan) <sup>19</sup> . 6.1.2.3. Interviews with organization's specialists
6.1.3. OVOS materials shall describe <i>the environment</i> <sup>20</sup>	6.1.3.1. Materials of OVOS and/or EE. 6.1.3.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoveniya lesov (forest management plan) <sup>16</sup> . 6.1.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders

<sup>17</sup> Hereinafter, OVOS in indicators of Criterion 6.1 does not mean the OVOS procedure as per FZ *On Ecological Expertise* and the Resolution of the National Environmental Protection Committee of the Russian Federation of May 16 2000 No.372 (see Annex A). The organization may use these regulations as a basis for its own OVOS procedure. OVOS may be performed by the organization *itself*, *the author of the forest management plan (or parts thereof)* or *a third party*.

<sup>18</sup> Types of activities in indicators of Criterion 6.1 may include timber harvesting, forest regeneration and silvicultural operations, guard and protection of forests, biodiversity conservation, building forest infrastructure and auxiliary works.

<sup>19</sup> Proekt osvoeniya lesov and lesokhozyaystvenny reglament may contain some materials required for OVOS: e.g. description of planned activities and components of the environment.

<sup>20</sup> The term 'environment' used in indicators of Criterion 6.1 means vegetation, aquatic objects, soils, fauna, landscapes, visual quality of landscape, socio-economic issues (infrastructure, employment and its forms, demography etc.) which may be affected by the planned activities.

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>6.1.4. OVOS materials shall describe unique and/or protected resources present in the area being certified:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– 6.1.4a. High conservation value forests and representative <i>samples of forest ecosystems</i> (taking into account the borders of existing and candidate protected areas, categories of <i>protected forests</i>, <i>special protection forest habitats</i> approved maps and plans of ecological networks) (see Annexes D and E).</li> <li>– 6.1.4b. Rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi included in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and regional red data books (lists) (see Annex C).</li> </ul> <p>6.1.4c. Species covered by multilateral agreements on environment protection ratified by Russia consistent with 1.3.1 (see Annex B)</p>	<p>6.1.4.1. Materials of OVOS and/or EE.</p> <p>6.1.4.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.1.4.3. Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and regional red data books (lists), multilateral agreements on environment protection ratified by Russia.</p> <p>6.1.4.4. Survey materials, including maps of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi.</p> <p>6.1.4.5. Methodologies and guidelines for identification and protection of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi.</p> <p>6.1.4.6. Survey materials, including maps of HCVF and representative samples of forest ecosystems, borders of protective forests and OZU, existing and projected SPAs, approved charts and projects of ecological networks).</p> <p>6.1.4.7. Methods and guidelines on identification and protection of HCVF and representative samples of forest ecosystems.</p> <p>6.1.4.8. Agreements with stakeholders on HCVF protection.</p> <p>6.1.4.9. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.1.4.10. Interviews with district level forest management administration.</p> <p>6.1.4.11. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>6.1.5. OVOS shall assess the planned activities in terms of their impact on the environment, including unique and/or protected resources consistent with 6.1.3 at landscape level (or district level forest management unit).</p> <p>Guidance: Impacts leading to the environmental pollution, removal of various natural and cultural and historic resources or negative effects thereon shall be assessed</p>	<p>6.1.5.1. Materials of OVOS and/or EE.</p> <p>6.1.5.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.1.5.3. Management guidelines.</p> <p>6.1.5.4. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.1.5.5. Interviews with district level forest management administration</p>
<p>6.1.6. OVOS shall assess the planned activities in terms of the impact of processing machines and other equipment on the environment at the local level.</p> <p>Guidance: See Guidance to 6.1.5</p>	<p>6.1.6.1. Materials of OVOS and/or EE.</p> <p>6.1.6.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.1.6.3. Management guidelines drawn out and/or applied by the organization.</p> <p>6.1.6.4. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.1.6.5. Interviews with district level forest management administration</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>6.1.7. OVOS shall assess the rationale for and sustainability of the recommended total AAC <i>for the leased forest area</i> and planned annual harvest level.</p> <p>Guidance: See also 5.6.2. and 5.6.3</p>	<p>6.1.7.1. Rationale for AAC got the leased forest area and expected annual harvest level.</p> <p>6.1.7.2. Materials of OVOS and/or EE.</p> <p>6.1.7.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.1.7.4. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.1.7.5. Interviews with district level forest management administration</p>
<p>6.1.8. OVOS shall suggest measures to prevent and/or reduce the potential negative effect of the planned activity on the environment at the landscape and local levels</p>	<p>6.1.8.1. Materials of OVOS and/or EE.</p> <p>6.1.8.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.1.8.3. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.1.8.4. Interviews with district level forest management administration</p>
<p>6.1.9. The organization shall supervise and assess the environmental impact of the performed activities at the local level.</p> <p>Guidance: See also indicators of criterion 8.2</p>	<p>6.1.9.1. Written operating guidelines for planning and carrying out silvicultural and harvest operations, drawn out and applied by the organization.</p> <p>6.1.9.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.1.9.3. Assessment and supervision procedures, certificates of harvest area inspections and forest site acceptance certificates.</p> <p>6.1.9.4. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.1.9.5. Field inspection.</p>
<p>6.1.10. The organization shall take into account the findings of OVOS consistent with 6.1.2–6.1.9 when planning and implementing management operations</p>	<p>6.1.10.1. Materials of OVOS and/or EE.</p> <p>6.1.10.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.1.10.3. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.1.10.4. Field inspection</p>



<b>Criterion 6.2. Safeguards shall exist which protect rare, threatened and endangered species and their habitats (e.g. nesting and feeding areas). Conservation zones and protection areas shall be established, appropriate to the scale and intensity of forest management and the uniqueness of the affected resources. Inappropriate hunting, fishing, trapping and collecting shall be controlled</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>6.2.1. For species of flora and fauna occurring within the forest area being certified and covered by <i>CITES</i> or international agreements on environment protection, relevant requirements shall be observed.</p> <p>Guidance: See Annexes B and C</p>	<p>6.2.1.1. Texts of conventions and relevant agreements ratified by Russia.</p> <p>6.2.1.2. List of relevant species and areas.</p> <p>6.2.1.3. Maps or relevant licenses, if necessary</p>
<p>6.2.2. The organization shall compile a list of <i>rare, threatened and endangered species</i> occurring within the forest area being certified.</p> <p>Guidance: Lists of such species shall be based on the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and regional red data books and lists of rare species, shall take into account species which may be threatened by forest management activity and contain descriptions of their typical <i>habitats</i>, threats and required protective measures (see Annex C). For regions where red data books and/or lists are not present or obviously are incomplete (e.g. fungi are absent), available scientific publications containing information about rare species of such groups should be used and/or local biology specialists should be engaged to compile such lists (see also 6.2.3)</p>	<p>6.2.2.1. Federal and regional red data books of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi or respective official lists (perechen).</p> <p>6.2.2.2. Lists of relevant species occurring in the area (including descriptions of typical habitats, threats and required protective measures)</p>
<p>6.2.3. The organization shall gather the best available information on the known <i>habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species</i> of plants, fungi and animals occurring within the forest area being certified.</p> <p>Guidance: Animals may require different seasonal habitats (e.g. winter and summer feeding places may vary. Of special significance are areas for growing the young in the spring etc.). Thus, information including that on various seasonal habitats of animals should be gathered.</p>	<p>6.2.3.1. Review of available materials on rare, threatened and endangered species, including maps.</p> <p>6.2.3.2. Methods for identifying rare, threatened and endangered species.</p> <p>6.2.3.3. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.2.3.4. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>6.2.4. The organization shall conduct additional field surveys and/or use other methods for identification of habitats consistent with 6.2.1 and taking into account 6.2.2 and measures on biodiversity conservation at the <i>harvest area</i> level (during designation of harvest areas) (see 6.3.9 and 6.3.10).</p> <p>Guidance: In practice, <i>key habitats</i> can be identified - habitats where there is a high probability of non-accidental occurrence of <i>rare, threatened and endangered species</i> as well as vulnerable and care demanding <i>species</i>. Such potential habitats are identified using indicator species or other habitat characteristics, primarily in sites designated for harvest (See further Annex C)</p>	<p>6.2.4.1. Methods for identifying rare, threatened and endangered species.</p> <p>6.2.4.2. Materials of field surveys.</p> <p>6.2.4.3. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.2.4.4. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>6.2.5. Habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi identified in consistency with 6.2.3 and 6.2.4 shall be mapped.</p>	<p>6.2.5.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.2.5.2. Materials of field surveys, maps</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>Guidance: Maps can be of large scale (e.g. lease map). In first turn, habitats with concentration of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi shall be mapped. Maps can also contain information about large key habitats (that are comparable or exceed sizes of individual harvest area) or those of special conservation value (e.g. rare raptors nests). It is not required to mechanically transfer data on key habitats from technological maps</p>	
<p>6.2.6. The organization shall develop a system of measures for protecting <i>habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species</i> consistent with 6.2.1 and 6.2.2 and <i>key habitats</i> taking into account 6.3.9 and 6.3.10.</p> <p>Guidance: Measures to protect <i>rare, threatened and endangered species</i> may fully prohibit or restrict management activities in sites of occurrence of such species within key habitats. See further Annex C</p>	<p>6.2.6.1. System of measures for protection of key habitats. 6.2.6.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.2.6.3. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>6.2.7. The organization shall compile a list of main game species occurring within the forest area being certified and their <i>key habitats</i> based on consultations with stakeholders, for example, game specialists and representatives of societies of hunters and fishermen.</p> <p>Guidance: Examples of <i>key habitats</i> for vertebrates are natural salt licks, rock outcrops, swamps, sparse forests, burnt and standing deadwood areas, areas rich with berries, bear lairs, places of winter concentration of hoofed animals and nesting grounds of large birds</p>	<p>6.2.7.1. Lists of game species and their potential key habitats. 6.2.7.2. Plans of management operations, technological maps. 6.2.7.3. Documentation regarding protected sites. 6.2.7.4. Evidence of communication, reports and minutes of meetings with game specialists and representatives of societies of hunters and fishermen. 6.2.7.5. Interviews with representatives of societies of hunters and fishermen</p>
<p>6.2.8. The organization shall develop a system of measures for protecting <i>key habitats</i> of game species based on consultations with stakeholders, for example, game specialists and representatives of societies of hunters and fishermen</p>	<p>6.2.8.1. System of measures for protecting key habitats of game species. 6.2.8.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.2.8.3. Interviews with representatives of societies of hunters and fishermen</p>
<p>6.2.9. The organization shall implement measures for protecting <i>key habitats</i> of game species in <i>protected sites</i> and voluntarily ensures protection of newly identified <i>key habitats</i></p>	<p>6.2.9.1. System of measures for protecting key habitats of game species. 6.2.9.2. Reports on activities. 6.2.9.3. Interviews with local people. 6.2.9.4. Interviews with fishery and hunting inspectors. 6.2.9.5. Interviews with representatives of societies of hunters and fishermen. 6.2.9.6. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.2.9.7. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.2.10. The organization shall have <i>protected sites</i> with management restrictions within the forest area being certified, which ensure protection of <i>habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species and key habitats</i>.</p> <p>Guidance: Priority in terms of conservation should be given to <i>key habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi</i>, including sites of particular significance for the life cycles of vertebrates. Such habitats (including potential ones) may be protected within HCVF and <i>representative samples of ecosystems</i>. Thus, <i>protected sites</i> may include existing and candidate protected areas (see <i>Annex D</i>); im-</p>	<p>6.2.10.1. Documents regarding protected sites. 6.2.10.2. Maps. 6.2.10.3. Field inspection</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>portant bird areas of Russia and Ramsar wetlands (both see <i>Annex E</i>); <i>OZU</i> and <i>protective forests</i>, including candidate areas for ecological networks; and any areas voluntarily set aside by the organization. See further <i>Annex C</i>, Criterion 6.4, Principle 9, and <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>HCVF, Representative Samples of Existing Ecosystems and Ecological Networks</i></p>	
<p>6.2.11. To ensure the protection of <i>habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species</i> within the forest area being certified, the organization shall establish new <i>protected sites</i> with legal status (<i>protective forests, OZU or protected areas</i>) or such areas are set aside voluntary.</p> <p>Guidance: For voluntarily set aside areas, the organization shall provide documented evidence of its efforts aimed at granting legal status to such areas (e.g. correspondence with authorities in charge or support of efforts by other organizations)</p>	<p>6.2.11.1. Evidence of establishment of protected sites, documented proposals on their establishment and written commitments of voluntary conservation efforts approved by organization's management, including maps.</p> <p>6.2.11.2. Evidence of communication and minutes of meetings with stakeholders.</p> <p>6.2.11.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.2.11.4. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.2.11.5. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>6.2.12. The staff shall be aware of materials about <i>rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi</i> and the list of game species occurring within the forest area being certified, their typical <i>key habitats</i> as well as measures for protecting these species</p>	<p>6.2.12.1. Lists of rare, threatened and endangered species and game species occurring in the area, their key habitats and protection measures.</p> <p>6.2.12.2. Records of meetings and field trainings for staff (programs of courses, lists of participants).</p> <p>6.2.12.3. Interviews with staff.</p> <p>6.2.12.4. Interviews with organization's managers</p>
<p>6.2.13. The organization shall provide assistance to the authorized government agencies and other <i>stakeholders</i> in performing control of hunting and fishing.</p> <p>Guidance: The organization's task is to assist the authorized government agencies in fight against poaching and/or take preventive measures in the area being certified and inform the authorized government agencies about violations taking place. This is not the obligation of the organization to create a system for supervising the observation of hunting, fishing and non-timber products harvesting rules, including licenses etc. within its area</p>	<p>6.2.13.1. Records of measures taken to protect animals and control hunting and fishing.</p> <p>6.2.13.2. Interviews with fishery and hunting inspectors.</p> <p>6.2.13.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>6.2.13.4. Field inspection</p>



<b>Criterion 6.3. Ecological functions and values shall be maintained intact, enhanced, or restored, including:</b> <b>a) Forest regeneration and succession,</b> <b>b) Genetic, species, and ecosystem diversity,</b> <b>c) Natural cycles that affect the productivity of the forest ecosystem</b>	
Indicators	Means of verification
<b>a) Forest regeneration and succession (see also indicators 6.11-6.17 below)</b>	
<p>6.3.1. The main ecological characteristics of the forest condition within the area being certified shall be identified, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• forested area;</li> <li>• stand composition and age distribution;</li> <li>• areas of burnt and dead stands;</li> <li>• stand distribution according to management targets (<i>protective</i>, exploitation and reserve);</li> <li>• the share of stands with tree species prohibited for harvest by federal and regional regulations; and</li> <li>• the share of forest communities considered to be rare in the area.</li> </ul> <p>Guidance: In the taiga zone of European Russia, rare forests types can be stands with noticeable admixture of noble hardwood species (oak, elm, ash, linden, maple and alike), Siberian larch, Siberian pine, black alder and tall forb spruce stands. See further <i>Annexes B, C and E</i></p>	<p>6.3.1.1. Lists of tree species prohibited for harvest by federal and regional regulations and rare forest communities.</p> <p>6.3.1.2. Data on the main ecological characteristics of the forest site condition.</p> <p>6.3.1.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan)</p>
6.3.2. Data on changes in the ecological characteristics of the forest condition consistent with 6.3.1 shall be regularly recorded	<p>6.3.2.1. Forest inventory materials.</p> <p>6.3.2.2. Records of annually collected data</p>
6.3.3. Degraded areas within the forest area being certified (which degraded as a result of management activities prior to <i>certification</i> ) – long unregenerated cutovers and burnt areas, areas with abnormally high frequency of fire occurrence, eroded areas, mining areas, unauthorized waste disposal sites, other sources of adverse environmental impact) – shall be identified	<p>6.3.3.1. List of areas degraded as a result of management activities.</p> <p>6.3.3.2. Maps.</p> <p>6.3.3.3. Inventory of forest areas exempted from the forest fund (for the district level forest management administration unit)</p>

#### Russian National FSC Standard

6.3.4. The organization shall implement measures ( <i>reforestation</i> and reclamation) to restore forest <i>areas degraded</i> as a result of management activities	6.3.4.1. Register of records of restoration and reclamation activities of degraded forest areas. 6.3.4.2. Field inspection
---	---

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>6.3.5. <i>Silvicultural operations shall mimic natural dynamics</i> of a particular forest.</p> <p>Guidance: Mimicking natural processes in varying degrees may cut the costs of forest regeneration and conservation of biological diversity and may reduce environmental risks related to peculiarities of the natural forest succession. Harvesting, regeneration and tending techniques shall consider typical disturbances (death of individual trees or their groups, susceptibility to windfall and fire), forest succession (e.g. natural replacement of dominating species during succession), composition and spatial stand structure. For forests heavily disturbed by man (frequent grass fires, heavy erosion and waterlogging of cutovers, simplified stand composition etc.), the silvicultural system shall focus on maintaining and/or regenerating elements of the natural dynamics. Harvesting shall not mimic catastrophic disturbances of low frequency (e.g. large-scale fires killing almost all stand) (see <i>Annex C</i>, section <i>Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting</i>)</p>	<p>6.3.5.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.3.5.2. Interviews with organization's specialists and forest surveyors.</p> <p>6.3.5.3. Rationale for harvesting and silvicultural techniques.</p> <p>6.3.5.4. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.3.6. In <i>harvest areas</i> design, natural landscape borders shall be considered</p>	<p>6.3.6.1. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.3.6.2. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders).</p> <p>6.3.6.3. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.3.7. The organization shall have a program to switch over from large-scale <i>clearcuts</i> to <i>narrow clear-strip clearcuts</i> and/or small-size <i>clearcuts</i> (up to several hectares), <i>shelterwood (multistage) cuts</i> and/or <i>selection cuts</i> in forest types where it is feasible.</p> <p>Guidance: Such switch may be justified by the forest conditions (broken topography, risk of waterlogging after clearcut, stand structure (uneven-aged or multi-species forest), forest functions (conservation of protection properties, biological diversity, recreational attractiveness of the forest site) or economic considerations (transfer to intensive forestry). See further <i>Annex C</i>, section <i>Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting</i></p>	<p>6.3.7.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.3.7.2. Program to switch over to narrow clear-strip clearcuts and/or small-size <i>clearcuts</i> (up to several hectares), shelterwood (multistage) cuts and/or selection cuts.</p> <p>6.3.7.3. Share of cuts other than clearcuts.</p> <p>6.3.7.4. Documents proving the implementation of the program.</p> <p>6.3.7.5. Interviews with stakeholders</p>

<b>b) Genetic, species, and ecosystem diversity</b>	
<p>6.3.8. The following windthrow resistant <i>key stand elements</i> (residual trees and their groups) shall be completely or partially left during timber harvesting:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• old trees of <i>non-target species</i>;</li> <li>• large trees with holes;</li> <li>• trees with large bird nests;</li> <li>• veteran trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy; and</li> <li>• tree species considered to be rare in this area.</li> </ul> <p>Guidance: Rare are species of trees, shrubs and lianas prohibited for harvest at the federal or regional level as well as viable trees of valuable species (oak, beech, ash, linden, Siberian and Korean pines etc.) occurring at the limits of their natural range (see also 6.2.2). See <i>Annex C, section Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting</i></p>	<p>6.3.8.1. Red data books, list of rare tree species, list of key stand elements, Timber Harvesting Regulations and operating guidelines.</p> <p>6.3.8.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.3.8.3. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</p> <p>6.3.8.4. Interviews with staff.</p> <p>6.3.8.5. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.3.9. For survival of species dependant on deadwood, during harvesting (including salvage cuts) the following <i>key stand elements</i> that do not threaten forest health and future <i>forest regeneration</i> shall be retained:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• windthrow resistant dying trees and snags located far from roads, landings and other similar sites, such trees left within clumps and groups;</li> <li>• hanging and dying trees and snags more than 30–40 cm in diameter which are a hazard shall be cut down and left as deadwood;</li> <li>• high stumps of natural origin;</li> <li>• large down deadwood, especially more than 30–40 cm in diameter; and</li> <li>• big logging residues.</li> </ul> <p>Guidance: If technically feasible (e.g. timber harvesters are used), dangerous trees should be felled at the height of 4–6 m above the ground, leaving high stumps. See also <i>Annex C, section Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting</i></p>	<p>6.3.9.1. Timber Harvesting Regulations and operating guidelines.</p> <p>6.3.9.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.3.9.3. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</p> <p>6.3.9.4. Interviews with staff.</p> <p>6.3.9.5. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.3.10. In case of <i>clearcuts</i> (and final cut in multi-stage systems), the organization shall ensure <i>regeneration</i> of <i>target tree species</i> while preserving other tree species occurring in the natural forest.</p> <p>Guidance: Possible regeneration measures may include retention of seed trees and their groups and patches with advanced growth and young trees, seeding from adjacent forest walls and tree planting. The effectiveness of various <i>forest regeneration</i> and silvicultural techniques used in particular forest conditions should be checked at trial sites. See also 8.2.14</p>	<p>6.3.10.1. Timber Harvesting Regulations and operating guidelines.</p> <p>6.3.10.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.3.10.3. Records of regeneration monitoring.</p> <p>6.3.10.4. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.3.11. When using <i>clearcuts</i> (as well as after the final cut of <i>shelterwood (multistage) harvesting</i>) on the area exceeding 10 ha, the patchiness of a</p>	<p>6.3.11.1. Timber Harvesting Regulations and operating guidelines.</p> <p>6.3.11.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>forest landscape shall be preserved by leaving wind-resistant forest strips and clumps (including complex patches with seed trees, clumps and strips) as well as <i>key habitats</i> (<i>key elements</i>).</p> <p>Guidance: A priority should be given to rare non-typical forest patches and patches with <i>key stand elements</i>. Diameter (width) of strips and clumps shall be at least 1.5 times more than the average height of stand retained. Patchy forest landscape shall be preserved taking into account the type of forest and soil conditions and risk of windfall. <i>Key habitats</i> and <i>key elements</i> see Annex C (e.g. Table C3)</p>	<p>inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.3.11.3. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</p> <p>6.3.11.4. Interview with staff.</p> <p>6.3.11.5. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.3.12. Slash residues shall be used to protect the soil on skid roads or distributed over the <i>harvest area</i> to improve forest conditions or gathered in piles or walls (taking into account 5.5.7.). <u>Said methods</u> of using slash may be combined, if required</p>	<p>6.3.12.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines.</p> <p>6.3.12.2. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</p> <p>6.3.12.3. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.3.13. The organization shall burn or take away slash residues from a <i>cutover</i> only when this measure is necessary for <i>forest regeneration</i> and fire or <i>pest or forest disease management</i>.</p> <p>Guidance: Use of logging waste see 5.3.2</p>	<p>6.3.13.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines.</p> <p>6.3.13.2. Harvest documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</p> <p>6.3.13.3. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.3.14. Artificial <i>forest regeneration</i> shall be applied only when natural <i>forest regeneration</i> failed, is complicated or does not meet management objectives or permitted <i>regeneration</i> timelines.</p> <p>Guidance: In areas with natural forest (where intensive forest management is not planned), the forest management shall encourage and use natural regeneration methods, for example, by identifying and retaining seed trees. In many cases, retaining more seed trees than prescribed by current rules is expedient</p>	<p>6.3.14.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines.</p> <p>6.3.14.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).</p> <p>6.3.14.3. Records of regeneration monitoring.</p> <p>6.3.14.4. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.3.15. Staff shall be familiar with measures aimed at preserving and maintaining ecological functions and conservation values of forest (see 6.3.5–6.3.14) and are trained in their application.</p> <p>Guidance: See also 3.3.6, 6.2.13 and 6.5.2</p>	<p>6.3.15.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines are available and accessible to staff.</p> <p>6.3.15.2. Documents on training programs, extension courses, internships etc.</p> <p>6.3.15.3. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.3.15.4. Interviews with staff</p>
<p><b>c) Natural cycles that affect the productivity of the forest ecosystem: see indicators 6.5.3-6.5.10 and 6.6.7</b></p>	

<b>Criterion 6.4. Representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape shall be protected in their natural state and recorded on maps, appropriate to the scale and intensity of operations and the uniqueness of the affected resources</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>6.4.1. The organization shall establish a network of <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i> within the forest area being certified, which provides preservation of the diversity of landscapes, ecosystems, habitat types and local flora and fauna.</p> <p>Guidance: See Annex E, section HC VF, <i>Representative Samples of Existing Ecosystems and Ecological Networks</i></p>	<p>6.4.1.1. List of types of representative samples of existing ecosystems.</p> <p>6.4.1.2. Forest inventory materials, other materials with maps.</p> <p>6.4.1.3. Interviews with organization's specialists</p>
<p>6.4.2. The extent to which the existing <i>protected sites</i> network includes all types of ecosystems and landscapes (forest types and forest conditions) occurring within the forest area being certified (i.e. is representative) shall be established</p>	<p>6.4.2.1. Forest inventory materials.</p> <p>6.4.2.2. Analytic materials with maps.</p> <p>6.4.2.3. Interviews with organization's specialists</p>
<p>6.4.3. The extent to which the existing <i>protected sites</i> network provides protection of regionally and locally <i>rare and threatened types of ecosystems</i> and landscapes shall be established</p>	<p>6.4.3.1. Forest inventory materials.</p> <p>6.4.3.2. Analytic materials with maps.</p> <p>6.4.3.3. Interviews with organization's specialists</p>
<p>6.4.4. Additional <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i> shall be identified to fill the gaps in the <i>protected sites</i> network at a landscape level (district level forest management administration unit)</p>	<p>6.4.4.1. Results of the gap analysis of the protected sites network.</p> <p>6.4.4.2. Documents proving the performance.</p> <p>6.4.4.3. Evidence of communication with stakeholders (NGOs, forest surveyors, conservation biologists, indigenous peoples representatives)</p>
<p>6.4.5. Identified <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i> shall be described and mapped</p>	<p>6.4.5.1. Site descriptions.</p> <p>6.4.5.2. Maps</p>
<p>6.4.6. Borders of identified areas within the area of on-going forestry operations and road construction shall be marked on site</p>	<p>6.4.6.1. Maps.</p> <p>6.4.6.2. Interviews with organization's specialists.</p> <p>6.4.6.3. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.4.7. Identified <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i> shall have management regimes sufficient to ensure their protection or maintenance.</p> <p>Guidance: For voluntarily set aside areas, the organization shall provide documented evidence of its efforts aimed at granting such areas a legal status (e.g. correspondence with relevant authorities or support to efforts by other organizations)</p>	<p>6.4.7.1. Site descriptions.</p> <p>6.4.7.2. Evidence of communication with forest inventory organizations and forest management administration.</p> <p>6.4.7.3. Interviews with stakeholders.</p> <p>6.4.7.4. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.4.8. The management restrictions (regimes) in respective areas shall be observed</p>	<p>6.4.8.1. Site descriptions.</p> <p>6.4.8.2. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders).</p> <p>6.4.8.3. Interviews with stakeholders.</p> <p>6.4.8.4. Field inspection</p>

<b>Criterion 6.5. Written guidelines shall be prepared and implemented to: control erosion; minimize forest damage during harvesting, road construction, and all other mechanical disturbances; and protect water resources</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
6.5.1. The organization shall have written operating guidelines for forest workers aimed at reducing the risk of degradation of forest, soil and water resources; the operation guidelines shall describe practices to be avoided or minimized during harvesting and other <i>silvicultural operations</i> and construction of forest roads and hydrotechnical installations in consistency with requirements of 6.5.3–6.5.10	6.5.1.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines. 6.5.1.2. Interviews with organization's specialists
6.5.2. Staff shall know the operating guidelines consistent with 6.5.1 and operating guidelines and are trained to implement them	6.5.2.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines are available and accessible to staff. 6.5.2.2. Documents on training programs, extension courses, internships etc. 6.5.2.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.5.2.4. Interviews with staff
6.5.3. The choice of technique and timing of harvesting and other <i>silvicultural operations</i> shall take into account forest type and soil conditions at the <i>harvest area</i> in order to minimize the impact on soils due to mechanical damage, compaction, paludification and erosion development.  Guidance: This may be achieved by suspending harvesting, skidding and removal of timber from forest in periods when the soil is wet; by harvesting of timber on moist and/or rich loamy and clayey soils only in winter; by restricting the number of skid rows and landings on <i>harvesting areas</i> and optimization of the areal extent of them	6.5.3.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines. 6.5.3.2. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 6.5.3.3. Inspection records of harvest areas. 6.5.3.4. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.5.3.5. Field inspection
6.5.4. Timber shall not be hauled along lakes, streams, including beds of small rivers and streams as well as ephemeral streams	6.5.4.1. Administrative regulations and operating guidelines. 6.5.4.2. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 6.5.4.3. Field inspection
6.5.5. Fuel and oil storage and machinery or vehicle parking shall be prohibited within <i>water protection zones</i> and on the ice of streams and pools	6.5.5.1. Administrative regulations and operating guidelines. 6.5.5.2. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 6.5.5.3. Interviews with staff. 6.5.5.4. Field inspection
6.5.6. Construction and use of the drainage system of forest roads shall exclude paludification and permanent rise of water table in soils	6.5.6.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines. 6.5.6.2. Design of roads and hydrotechnical structures, including maps. 6.5.6.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.5.6.4. Field inspection

### Russian National FSC Standard

6.5.7. Construction of forest roads and bridges shall not disturb <i>habitats critical</i> for lifecycles of animals (in particular, by avoiding sensitive areas, restricting number of water crossings, no water-crossing construction during fish breeding period and preserving natural ways of animal migration)	6.5.7.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines. 6.5.7.2. Forest inventory materials with maps. 6.5.7.3. Design of roads and bridges with maps. 6.5.7.4. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 6.5.7.5. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.5.7.6. Interviews with hunting and fishery inspectors. 6.5.7.7. Field inspection
6.5.8. Harvesting, other <i>silvicultural operations</i> , construction of forest roads and hydro-technical structures (including bridges) and the use of machinery and equipment shall not lead to pollution of nearby lakes, ponds and adjacent <i>water protection zones</i>	6.5.8.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines. 6.5.8.2. Forest inventory materials with maps. 6.5.8.3. Interviews with staff. 6.5.8.4. Interviews with local communities. 6.5.8.5. Interviews with protection and/or enforcement agencies in the sphere of management of natural resources. 6.5.8.6. Field inspection
6.5.9. Harvesting, other <i>silvicultural operations</i> , construction of forest roads and hydro-technical installations shall observe management restrictions (regime) in <i>protected sites</i>	6.5.9.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines. 6.5.9.2. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 6.5.9.3. Materials on protected sites with maps. 6.5.9.4. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.5.9.5. Field inspection
6.5.10. Technological processes, machinery and equipment shall be used in a way to minimize damage of residual trees at <i>harvest areas</i> as well as of trees at adjacent forest patches	6.5.10.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines. 6.5.10.2. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 6.5.10.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.5.10.4. Field inspection



<p><b>Criterion 6.6. Management systems shall promote the development and adoption of environmentally friendly non-chemical methods of pest management and strive to avoid the use of chemical pesticides. World Health Organization Type 1A and 1B and chlorinated hydrocarbon pesticides; pesticides that are persistent, toxic or whose derivatives remain biologically active and accumulate in the food chain beyond their intended use; as well as any pesticides banned by international agreement, shall be prohibited. If chemicals are used, proper equipment and training shall be provided to minimize health and environmental risks</b></p>	
Indicators	Means of verification
<p>6.6.1. The organization shall have a strategy for the use of <i>biological</i> and <i>chemical control methods</i> for <i>pest and disease management</i>.</p> <p>Guidance: Requirements to organization's activity in this respect are described in <i>FSC Pesticides Policy: Guidance on Implementation FSC-GUI-30-001 VERSION 2-0 EN</i></p>	<p>6.6.1.1. Evidence of compliance with <i>FSC Pesticides Policy FSC-GUI-30-001 VERSION 2-0 EN</i>.          6.6.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan).          6.6.1.3. Strategy for the use of biological and chemical control methods of pest management.          6.6.1.4. Dynamics of area damaged by pests and diseases.          6.6.1.5. Interviews with organization's specialists</p>
<p>6.6.2. According to the strategy <i>biological methods of pest and disease management</i> shall be given preference in use over <i>chemical control methods</i></p>	<p>6.6.2.1. Strategy for the use of biological and chemical methods of pest and disease management.          6.6.2.2. Interviews with organization's specialists</p>
<p>6.6.3. The strategy shall pay special attention to early detection of <i>pest</i> and disease outbreaks and preventive measures</p>	<p>6.6.3.1. Strategy for the use of biological and chemical methods of pest and disease management.          6.6.3.2. Interviews with organization's specialists</p>
<p>6.6.4. Highly hazardous <i>pesticides</i> (chemicals used for plants protection) shall not be used, namely:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• World Health Organization Type 1A and 1B pesticides;</li> <li>• chlorinated hydrocarbon <i>pesticides</i>;</li> <li>• chlorinated hydrocarbon <i>pesticides</i>;</li> <li>• <i>pesticides</i> that are persistent, toxic or whose derivatives remain biologically active and accumulate in the food chain beyond their intended use; and</li> <li>• any <i>pesticides</i> banned by international agreements.</li> </ul> <p>Guidance: Further details on the list of ingredients of highly hazardous <i>pesticides</i> and their criteria see <i>FSC-GUI-30-001 VERSION 2-0 EN FSC Pesticides policy guidance (Annexes I and II)</i>, <i>FSC-POL-30-001 (2005) FSC Pesticides policy</i>, <i>FSC Technical Series No. 2009 – 001 Guide to integrated pest, disease and weed management in FSC certified forests and plantations</i>. The national working group maintains a special updated register (<a href="http://www.fsc.ru">www.fsc.ru</a>) of registered pesticides complying with FSC requirements. In exemplary circumstances, FSC may permit the use of highly hazardous <i>pesticides</i> from this list within the certified forest "5.4.2. Derogations will normally be issued for a five-year period, but can be extended according to the requirements outlined in the <i>FSC-PRO-01-004 Processing Applications for Temporary Derogations to FSC Pesticides Policy</i>"</p>	<p>6.6.4.1. FSC policies <i>FSC-GUI-30-001 VERSION 2-0 EN</i>, <i>FSC-PRO-01-004</i> and FSC Technical Series No. 2009 – 001 <i>are available</i>.          6.6.4.2. Regulations on pesticide administration.          6.6.4.3. Register of records of the use of pesticides.          6.6.4.4. Interviews with organization's specialists.          6.6.4.5. Field inspection</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

6.6.5. <i>Pesticides</i> shall be used only if other non-chemical methods of <i>pest and disease management</i> have appeared to be ineffective	6.6.5.1. Register of records of the use of chemical and biological methods of pest and disease management. 6.6.5.2. Dynamics of area damaged by pests and diseases. 6.6.5.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.6.5.4. Field inspection
6.6.6. <i>Pesticides</i> shall be used only on permit of relevant governmental agencies and according to administrative regulations for their use	6.6.6.1. List of permitted pesticides. 6.6.6.2. Environmental impact assessment (OVOS) and/or ekologicheskaya ekspertiza. 6.6.6.3. Regulations for Sanitary Safety in Forest; SanPiN 1.2.1077-01 Hygienic Requirements for Storage, Application and Transport of Pesticides and Agricultural Chemicals. 6.6.6.4. Register of records of the use of pesticides. 6.6.6.5. Interviews with organization's specialists
6.6.7. Fertilizers shall be used for forestry purposes only in <i>plantations</i> , forest tree nurseries, and on reforesting bare lands (e.g. abandoned agricultural fields) as well as when reclaiming <i>degraded</i> non-forest lands	6.6.7.1. Documentation, including the rationale for the use of fertilizers. 6.6.7.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.6.7.3. Field inspection
6.6.8. The organization shall observe health and safety regulations for the use of chemicals (in particular, providing necessary training and health check-ups of workers)	6.6.8.1. Health and safety regulations. 6.6.8.2. Register of records of health and safety instructions. 6.6.8.3. Register of records of health check-ups. 6.6.8.4. Interviews with staff. 6.6.8.5. Field inspection

**Russian National FSC Standard**

<b><i>Criterion 6.7. Chemicals, containers, liquid and solid non-organic wastes including fuel and oil shall be disposed of in an environmentally appropriate manner at off-site locations</i></b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
6.7.1. Chemicals, their containers, liquid and solid nonorganic wastes, including fuel, oil and highly inflammable liquids shall be stored and managed in line with applicable administrative rules and regulations	6.7.1.1. Rules and guidelines for management and storage of chemicals and containers thereof, liquid and solid nonorganic wastes, including fuel and oil. 6.7.1.2. Records of storage and management of chemical wastes and containers. 6.7.1.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.7.1.4. Field inspection
6.7.2. Refilling and oil replacement in chain-saws, machinery and equipment shall be done in specially dedicated places, where the risk of environmental pollution is low	6.7.2.1. Machinery and equipment operation manuals. 6.7.2.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.7.2.3. Field inspection
6.7.3. Soil and water shall be protected from pollution during storage and refilling with fuel and oil	6.7.3.1. Operating guidelines for management and storage of chemicals and containers thereof, liquid and solid nonorganic wastes, including fuel and oil. 6.7.3.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.7.3.3. Field inspection
6.7.4. Places for storage of chemicals, fuel and oil and waste shall be equipped in consistency with applicable health and safety regulations	6.7.4.1. Health and safety regulations. 6.7.4.2. Operating guidelines for management and storage of chemicals and containers thereof, liquid and solid nonorganic wastes, including fuel and oil. 6.7.4.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.7.4.4. Field inspection
6.7.5. Industrial and household waste shall be managed in consistency with applicable regulations	6.7.5.1. Operating guidelines for management and storage of chemicals and containers thereof, liquid and solid nonorganic wastes, including fuel and oil. 6.7.5.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.7.5.3. Field inspection
6.7.6. Waste from machinery and equipment shall be removed from the management area on completion of works	6.7.6.1. Operating guidelines for management and storage of chemicals and containers thereof, liquid and solid nonorganic wastes, including fuel and oil. 6.7.6.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.7.6.3. Field inspection
6.7.7. When economically and technically justified, environment friendly fuels and oils shall be used for machinery and equipment	6.7.7.1. Evidence of technical feasibility of acquiring and prices for environmentally friendly fuels and oils. 6.7.7.2. Technical data of fuels and oils. 6.7.7.3. Machinery and equipment operation manuals. 6.7.7.4. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.7.7.5. Field inspection

<b>Criterion 6.8. Use of biological control agents shall be documented, minimized, monitored and strictly controlled in accordance with national laws and internationally accepted scientific protocols. Use of genetically modified organisms shall be prohibited</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>6.8.1. Organisms (entomophagous insects or biological substances) shall only be used as <i>biological control agents</i> when the inefficiency of other methods of non-chemical <i>pest and disease management</i> is scientifically proved.</p> <p>Guidance: The use of <i>biological control agents</i> is preferable compared to that of <i>pesticides</i>. However, in some cases it may lead to adverse ecological implications, especially when <i>exotic</i> entomophagous insects are used</p>	<p>6.8.1.1. Plans of forest protection operations. 6.8.1.2. List of used biological control agents. 6.8.1.3. Documented rationale for the use of biological control agents. 6.8.1.4. Register of records of the use of biological control agents 6.8.1.5. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.8.1.6. Field inspection</p>
6.8.2. <i>Biological control agents</i> shall be used in consistency with applicable administrative regulations	<p>6.8.2.1. Regulations for Sanitary Safety in Forest; SanPiN 1.2.1077-01 Hygienic Requirements for Storage, Application and Transport of Pesticides and Agricultural Chemicals. 6.8.2.2. Plans of forest protection operations. 6.8.2.3. Register of records of the use of biological control agents. 6.8.2.4. Documented rationale for the use of biological control agents. 6.8.2.5. Report on the use of biological control agents. 6.8.2.6. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.8.2.7. Field inspection</p>
6.8.3. Genetically modified organisms shall not be used	<p>6.8.3.1. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.8.3.2. Plans of forest protection operations. 6.8.3.3. Interviews with representatives of environment protection agencies</p>
<b>Criterion 6.9. The use of exotic species<sup>21</sup> shall be carefully controlled and actively monitored to avoid adverse ecological impacts</b>	
6.9.1. The use of <i>exotic plants</i> shall only be allowed for maintenance of man-made stands consisting of introduced species, which are of high historical and cultural value (e.g. larch stands), for urban gardening and in <i>plantations</i> (see Principle 10)	<p>6.9.1.1. Forest inventory and historical materials, certificates of planted forests of exotic species. 6.9.1.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.9.1.3. Field inspection</p>
<p>6.9.2. All available scientific information and practical experience with respect to ecology and environmental risks associated with the use of all <i>exotic species</i> occurring within the forest area being certified in local or close natural conditions shall be collected.</p> <p>Guidance: This applies to all <i>exotic</i> trees and shrubs (e.g. Manitoba maple (<i>Acer negundo</i>)) and especially aggressive herbaceous species (e.g. hogweed (<i>Heracleum sosnowskyi</i>)), whose presence within the area is not associated with the applicant's activity, as well as to <i>exotic species</i>, which are to be used in <i>plantations</i> (see 10.8.3)</p>	<p>6.9.2.1. List of introduced species occurring within the area. 6.9.2.2. Scientific publications and practical experience on ecology and use of exotic species. 6.9.2.3. Evidence of communication and consultations with specialists in this respect. 6.9.2.4. Interviews with organization's specialists</p>
6.9.3. If <i>exotic species</i> consistent with 6.9.2 occur within the forest area being certified, the organization shall undertake measures to prevent their uncontrolled spread	<p>6.9.3.1. Certificates of planted forests of exotic species. 6.9.3.2. Records of exotic species monitoring and control. 6.9.3.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 6.9.3.4. Field inspection</p>

<sup>21</sup> This Criterion does not apply to *reintroduced species*, i.e. species that historically occurred in the area (e.g. noble broadleaf species that disappeared in some regions of European Russia) and for which special restoration measures are used.

<p><b>Criterion 6.10. Forest conversion to plantations or non-forest land uses shall not occur, except in circumstances where conversion:</b></p> <p><b>a) entails a very limited portion of the forest management unit; and</b></p> <p><b>b) does not occur on high conservation value forest areas; and</b></p> <p><b>c) will enable clear, substantial, additional, secure, long term conservation benefits across the forest management unit</b></p>	
Indicators	Means of verification
<p>6.10.1. Conversion of forests to <i>plantations</i> shall only be permitted when it occurs on the very limited portion of the forest management unit being certified. This means that all conditions below are met:</p> <p>a) Conversion does not occur on high conservation value forest areas (see also 6.10.3, 6.10.4), and</p> <p>b) It does not affect a total of more than 5% of the area of the FMU, and</p> <p>c) It does not exceed 0.5% of the area of the FMU in any one year and</p> <p>d) It enables clear, substantial, additional, secure, long-term conservation benefits across the FMU*</p> <p>* Decision of FSC Policy and Standards Committee at February 19-20, 2015</p>	<p>6.10.1.1. Rationale for establishment of plantations.</p> <p>6.10.1.2. Materials of OVOS and/or EE.</p> <p>6.10.1.3. Findings of assessment against Principle 9.</p> <p>6.10.1.4. Maps depicting conversion of HCVF to plantations.</p> <p>6.10.1.5. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>6.10.1.6. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>6.10.2. <i>Conversion of forest lands to other land categories</i>, whose function cannot guarantee conservation of forest cover in the <i>long term (except building forest infrastructure and local mineral resource quarries)</i>, shall only be permitted when it affects a very limited portion of the forest management unit, corresponds to the area development plans (housing, road construction etc.) and is approved at the federal, regional or municipal levels and supported by <i>local people</i>. Very limited portion means that all conditions below are met:</p> <p>a) Conversion does not occur on high conservation value forest areas (see also 6.10.3, 6.10.4), and</p> <p>b) It does not affect a total of more than 5% of the area of the FMU, and</p> <p>c) It does not exceed 0.5% of the area of the FMU in any one year and</p> <p>d) It enables clear, substantial, additional, secure, long-term conservation benefits across the FMU*</p> <p>Guidance: Construction of roads and other infrastructure elements required for forest management generally affects a very limited portion of the forest management unit. This indicator does not apply to lands with <i>HCVF</i>, see 6.10.4 and 6.10.5.</p> <p>* Decision of FSC Policy and Standards Committee at February 19-20, 2015</p>	<p>6.10.2.1. Rationale for conversion of forest lands.</p> <p>6.10.2.2. Evidence of the legality of conversion.</p> <p>6.10.2.3. Findings of assessment against Principle 9.</p> <p>6.10.2.4. Maps depicting conversion of HCVF to plantations.</p> <p>6.10.2.5. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>6.10.2.6. Interviews with local people.</p> <p>6.10.2.7. Interviews with local authorities</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>6.10.3. The organization shall not initiate <i>conversion of HCVF to lands of other categories</i>, whose function cannot guarantee conservation of forest cover in the <i>long term</i> (except construction of forest infrastructure)</p>	<p>6.10.3.1. Rationale for conversion of forest lands.          6.10.3.2. Documents confirming the legality of conversion.          6.10.3.3. Maps showing location of HCVF.          6.10.3.4. Interviews with organization's managers.          6.10.3.5. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>6.10.4. The organization shall undertake efforts to prevent <i>conversion of lands containing HCVF</i>, when it corresponds to the area development plans (housing, road construction etc.) approved at the federal, regional or municipal levels, especially when it is not supported by <i>local people</i></p>	<p>6.10.4.1. Rationale for conversion of lands.          6.10.4.2. Documents confirming the legality of conversion.          6.10.4.3. Evidence of communication, meeting minutes.          6.10.4.4. Interviews with organization's managers.          6.10.4.5. Interviews with local authorities.          6.10.4.6. Interviews with local people</p>

**PRINCIPLE 7: MANAGEMENT PLAN**

**A management plan – appropriate to the scale and intensity of the operations – shall be written, implemented, and kept up to date. The long term objectives of management, and the means of achieving them, shall be clearly stated**

<b>Criterion 7.1. The management plan and supporting documents shall provide:</b>	
<b>a) Management objectives;</b> <b>b) Description of the forest resources to be managed, environmental limitations, land use and ownership status, socio-economic conditions, and a profile of adjacent lands;</b> <b>c) Description of silvicultural and/or other management system, based on the ecology of the forest in question and information gathered through resource inventories;</b> <b>d) Rationale for rate of annual harvest and species selection;</b> <b>e) Provisions for monitoring of forest growth and dynamics;</b> <b>f) Environmental safeguards based on environmental assessments;</b> <b>g) Plans for the identification and protection of rare, threatened and endangered species;</b> <b>h) Maps describing the forest resource base including protected areas, planned management activities and land ownership;</b> <b>i) Description and justification of harvesting techniques and equipment to be used</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<b>a) Management objectives</b>	
<p>7.1.1. The <i>forest management plan</i><sup>22</sup> shall formulate <i>long-term</i> objectives of <i>forest management</i> that cover environmental protection, silvicultural, social and economic considerations for a <i>rotation period</i> and describe the ways how to meet them within the next 40 years but not less than the lease term regarding the following aspects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• forest products;</li> <li>• silvicultural system, including timber harvesting and <i>forest regeneration</i> techniques;</li> <li>• biodiversity conservation;</li> <li>• conservation of forest ecosystem (water and soil resources);</li> <li>• socio-economic benefits for population, including the use of forest for recreation, collection of berries and mushrooms, hunting and fishing;</li> <li>• protection of sites of special cultural and religious significance; and</li> <li>• public involvement in <i>forest management</i></li> </ul>	<p>7.1.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials.</p> <p>7.1.1.2. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>7.1.1.3. Interviews with organization's specialists</p>

<sup>22</sup> Hereinafter, forest management plan, may include, along with proekt osvoiniya lesov (FMP for a leased area) or lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (FMP for administrative forest management unit), other regulatory documents of the organization (strategy, policies, guidelines).

<b>b) Description of the forest resources to be managed, environmental limitations, land use and ownership status, socio-economic conditions, and a profile of adjacent lands</b>	
7.1.2. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall describe forest resources (forest types, species and age composition, growing stock) of the forest area being certified	7.1.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.2.2. Maps
7.1.3. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall contain general description of natural conditions (geography, geology, hydrology, soil, flora and fauna), including environmental limitations of the forest area being certified	7.1.3.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.3.2. Maps
7.1.4. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall describe the use and ownership status of land and forest resources and a profile of adjacent lands, including peculiarities of the use of natural resources	7.1.4.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.4.2. Maps
7.1.5. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall describe socio-economic conditions of organization activity (including those of the organization and settlements within or adjacent to the forest area being certified), taking into account 4.4.5	7.1.5.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan). 7.1.5.2. Materials of socio-economic impact assessments. 7.1.5.3. Maps
<b>c) Description of silvicultural and/or other management system, based on the ecology of the forest in question and information gathered through resource inventories</b>	
7.1.6. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall provide rationale for the silvicultural and/or other management systems of the use of forest resources (long-term forest management program taking into account 7.1.1) consistent with Principle 6  Guidance: Such long-term forest management program shall describe the intensity of the forest use model (harvesting techniques, tending and <i>forest regeneration</i> methods specifying the scope of relevant works)	7.1.6.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.6.2. Interviews with organization's specialists
7.1.7. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall provide rationale for the <i>forest regeneration</i> system consistent with Principle 6.  Guidance: see 7.1.6.	7.1.7.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.7.2. Interviews with organization's specialists
7.1.8. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall provide rationale for the system of <i>pest management</i> consistent with Principle 6	7.1.8.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.8.2. Interviews with organization's specialists
7.1.9. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall provide rationale for the forest protection system	7.1.9.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.9.2. Interviews with organization's specialists
7.1.10. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall describe the system of fire management	7.1.10.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.10.2. Lease agreement



## Russian National FSC Standard

<b>d) Rationale for rate of annual harvest and species selection</b>	
7.1.11. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall provide rationale for AAC for the leased forest area and planned harvest level consistent with Principle 6.  Guidance: consistent with 6.3.7 and 6.3.9.	7.1.11.1. Documents regulating calculation of AAC for the leased forest area. 7.1.11.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.11.3. Calculations of annual timber harvest level
<b>e) Provisions for monitoring of forest growth and dynamics</b>	
7.1.12. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall describe the system for monitoring of forest increment and dynamics consistent with Principles 6 and 8	7.1.12.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.12.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 7.1.12.3. Forest account materials
<b>f) Environmental safeguards based on environmental assessments</b>	
7.1.13. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall describe how the findings of environmental impact assessment at the landscape level associated with the presence of HCVF, representative samples of existing ecosystems, habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi and other key habitats (see 6.2 and 6.4) and sites of special significance for local people with regard to recreation, cultural and religious life, hunting, fishing and the use of other non-timber forest products are incorporated	7.1.13.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.13.2. Maps
7.1.14. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall describe how the findings of environmental impact assessment of forest management at the stand level (conservation of biodiversity, forest environment, non-timber forest resources, soil and water resources) consistent with 6.1 are incorporated	7.1.14.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.14.2. Interviews with organization's specialists
<b>g) Plans for the identification and protection of rare, threatened and endangered species</b>	
7.1.15. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall describe plans for identification and protection of HCVF, representative samples of existing ecosystems, habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi, and other key habitats (see 6.2 and 6.4)	7.1.15.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.15.2. List of measures to identify and protect HCVF, representative samples of existing ecosystems, habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi, and other key habitats. 7.1.15.3. Maps

<b>h) Maps describing the forest resource base including protected areas, planned management activities and land ownership</b>	
7.1.16. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall contain maps showing the forest resource	7.1.16.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.16.2. Maps
7.1.17. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall contain maps showing relative position and correspondence between different <i>protected forest sites</i> (including protected areas, <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i> ) and <i>HCVF</i> (see also 6.4 and 9.1).  Guidance: Various types of <i>protected sites</i> fulfill different functions; therefore they shall be identified separately. However, they may intersect (overlap with) each other. In this case, the <i>forest management plan</i> shall contain information on intersection (overlapping) of <i>HCVF</i> , <i>OZU</i> , <i>protective forests</i> , <i>protected areas</i> (including candidate areas) and <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i>	7.1.17.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.17.2. Maps, including those of <i>HCVF</i> , representative samples of existing ecosystems, protected areas and <i>OZU</i>
7.1.18. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall contain maps describing the planned forest management activities, including different types of use and different land users (leaseholders)	7.1.18.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.18.2. Maps
<b>i) Description and justification of harvesting techniques and equipment to be used</b>	
7.1.19. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall contain description and rationale for the system of harvesting and the use of machinery and equipment, including best available practices that minimize the adverse environmental impact and conserve biodiversity and forest environment in consistency with 6.3 and 6.5	7.1.19.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials. 7.1.19.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 7.1.19.3. Interviews with stakeholders

<b>Criterion 7.2. The management plan shall be periodically revised to incorporate the results of monitoring or new scientific and technical information, as well as to respond to changing environmental, social and economic circumstances</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
7.2.1. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall be revised as necessary to accommodate operational changes in response to the effect of natural and anthropogenic factors ( <i>pest</i> outbreaks, flooding, fires and illegal logging)	7.2.1.1. Procedure for revision of operational forest management plan. 7.2.1.2. Reports of monitoring records. 7.2.1.3. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan) or evidence of modification of forest management plans. 7.2.1.4. Interview with organization's specialists. 7.2.1.5 Maps
7.2.2. The <i>forest management plan</i> , including the plan of establishment of <i>protected sites</i> (6.2.11), shall be revised to accommodate operational changes in response to scientific information regarding <i>key habitats</i> (6.2.3, 6.2.6 and 6.2.9) and <i>HCVF</i> (9.3) received from research organizations and other <i>stakeholders</i> as well as to changes in policies and operational guidelines, which require immediate implementation	7.2.2.1. Procedure for revision of operational forest management plan. 7.2.2.2. Materials of surveys, research findings, correspondence, including maps, principal changes in organization's policies and operational guidelines. 7.2.2.3. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan) or evidence of changes to forest management plans. 7.2.2.4. Interview with stakeholders
7.2.3. The <i>forest management plan</i> , including the plan of establishment of <i>protected sites</i> (6.2.11), shall be revised to accommodate operational changes in response to additional organization's commitment agreed with <i>stakeholders</i> regarding conservation or modification of management restrictions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sites of special significance for <i>local people</i> regarding the use of forest resources consistent with 2.2.3;</li> <li>• sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance for <i>indigenous peoples</i> (3.3.5 and 3.3.7); and</li> <li>• <i>HCVF</i> (9.3)</li> </ul>	7.2.3.1. Procedure for revision of operational forest management plan. 7.2.3.2. Evidence of correspondence, protocols, agreements, including maps. 7.2.3.3. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan) or evidence of changes to forest management plans or documents verifying the changes to the forest management plan. 7.2.3.4. Interview with stakeholders
7.2.4. The <i>forest management plan</i> shall be regularly revised (not less than once in 5–10 years) to incorporate the results of monitoring of changing environmental, social and economic circumstances as well as new scientific and technical information consistent with Criterion 8.4	7.2.4.1. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan). 7.2.4.2. Records of monitoring and relevant recommendations (see Criterion 8.2). 7.2.4.3. Evidence of new scientific and technical data collection. 7.2.4.4. List of changes to the forest management plan (e.g. strategy, objectives, tasks and approaches to implementation). 7.2.4.5. Interviews with organization's specialists

<b>Criterion 7.3. Forest workers shall receive adequate training and supervision to ensure proper implementation of the management plan</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>7.3.1. Forest workers shall be qualified to perform their duties consistent with implementation of <i>forest management plan</i> (see also 4.1.1, 4.1.2, 4.1.4 and 6.5.2).</p> <p>Guidance: In particular, the organization shall have relevant forestry specialists (division)</p>	<p>7.3.1.1. Job descriptions/duty regulations.  7.3.1.2. Records of training and extension courses (programs of courses, lists of participants).  7.3.1.3. Interview with personnel manager.  7.3.1.4. Interviews with staff.  7.3.1.5. Diplomas, vocational training certificates</p>
<p>7.3.2. Forest workers shall be trained to extend their professional knowledge and skills not less than once in five years to ensure implementation of the <i>forest management plan</i></p>	<p>7.3.2.1. Records of extension courses (programs of courses, lists of participants).  7.3.2.2. Interview with personnel manager.  7.3.2.3. Interviews with staff</p>
<p>7.3.3. All forest work shall be supervised depending on the difficulty and importance of the task, by qualified specialists, to ensure fulfillment of the <i>forest management plan</i></p>	<p>7.3.3.1. Job descriptions/duty regulations.  7.3.3.2. Reports of job supervision.  7.3.3.3. Field inspection</p>
<b>Criterion 7.4. While respecting the confidentiality of information, forest managers shall make publicly available a summary of the primary elements of the management plan, including those listed in Criterion 7.1</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>7.4.1. The primary elements of the <i>forest management plan</i> (including those listed in Criterion 7.1) except <i>confidential information</i> shall be available to public.</p> <p>Guidance: With respect to 7.1.16 and 7.1.18, only information, disclosure of which could pose an irreversible threat to valuable natural objects (e.g. location of raptors nests, capercaillie leks etc.), as well as about the sites considered as such by <i>local</i> or <i>indigenous people</i>, shall be referred to as <i>confidential</i></p>	<p>7.4.1.1. List of confidential information.  7.4.1.2. Availability of summaries of the forest management plan to public.  7.4.1.3. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>7.4.2. The organization shall have a procedure for handling inquiries by the public about non-confidential information regarding the plans of management operations</p>	<p>7.4.2.1. Procedure for delivering non-confidential information.  7.4.2.2. Records of inquiries</p>

**PRINCIPLE 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT**

**Monitoring shall be conducted – appropriate to the scale and intensity of forest management – to assess the condition of the forest, yields of forest products, chain of custody, management activities and their social and environmental impacts**

<p><i><b>Criterion 8.1. The frequency and intensity of monitoring should be determined by the scale and intensity of forest management operations as well as the relative complexity and fragility of the affected environment. Monitoring procedures should be consistent and replicable over time to allow comparison of results and assessment of change</b></i></p>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>8.1.1. The organization shall have a documented monitoring program, which describes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8.1.1.1: parameters to be monitored;</li> <li>• 8.1.1.2: frequency;</li> <li>• 8.1.1.3: procedures;</li> <li>• 8.1.1.4: rationale; and</li> <li>• 8.1.1.5: responsibility for monitoring</li> </ul>	<p>8.1.1.1. List of monitoring parameters. 8.1.1.2. Monitoring program. 8.1.1.3. Monitoring procedures. 8.1.1.4. Interviews with organization's managers. 8.1.1.5. Interviews with organization's specialists</p>
<p>8.1.2. Monitoring, considering the scale and intensity of <i>forest management</i> operations as well as the relative complexity and fragility of the affected environment, shall assess (see 8.2):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8.1.2.1: the degree to which goals and objectives of management have been achieved;</li> <li>• 8.1.2.2: the degree of fulfillment and deviations from the <i>forest management plan</i>;</li> <li>• 8.1.2.3: unexpected effects of management activities;</li> <li>• 8.1.2.4: social (4.4) and environmental (6.1) impacts of management activities; and</li> <li>• 8.1.2.5: the need to revise the <i>forest management plan</i>.</li> </ul> <p>Guidance: Monitoring for small and medium organizations could be to a greater degree based on qualitative assessments and data collected by external organizations (governmental agencies, research institutions, non-governmental organizations and other organizations). Large private and state-owned organizations should to a greater degree use quantitative assessments and if necessary initiate and/or support relevant environmental research. If applicable, the organization shall use materials of the remote sensing of the forest use within the <i>forest land</i> performed by the Federal Forestry Agency. Results of the monitoring are available from relevant regional authorities</p>	<p>8.1.2.1. Monitoring program. 8.1.2.2. Monitoring procedures. 8.1.2.3. Documents of monitoring , including remote sensing</p>
<p>8.1.3. The monitoring program shall be revised if necessary based on the information collected as well as on new sources of data or monitoring techniques, including maps</p>	<p>8.1.3.1. Monitoring program. 8.1.3.2. Proposals to change the monitoring program</p>
<p>8.1.4. Monitoring procedures shall be consistent and replicable over time to allow comparison of results and assessment of change</p>	<p>8.1.4.1. List of monitoring parameters. 8.1.4.2. Monitoring program. 8.1.4.3. Monitoring procedures. 8.1.4.4. Interviews with organization's managers. 8.1.4.5. Interviews with staff</p>

<p><b>Criterion 8.2. Forest management should include the research and data collection needed to monitor, at a minimum, the following indicators:</b></p> <p><b>a) Yield of all forest products harvested.</b></p> <p><b>b) Growth rates, regeneration and condition of the forest.</b></p> <p><b>c) Composition and observed changes in the flora and fauna.</b></p> <p><b>d) Environmental and social impacts of harvesting and other operations.</b></p> <p><b>e) Costs, productivity, and efficiency of forest management</b></p>	
Indicators	Means of verification
<b>a) Yield of all forest products harvested</b>	
8.2.1. Data on removals of different types of forest products by category shall be collected	8.2.1.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.1.2. Field inspection
<b>b) Growth rates, regeneration and condition of the forest</b>	
8.2.2. Data on the wood increment rate shall be collected and analyzed	8.2.2.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.2.2. Field inspection
8.2.3. Data on the scope of <i>forest regeneration</i> operations shall be collected and analyzed by types and methods	8.2.3.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.3.2. Field inspection
8.2.4. Data on the composition, age and site quality of stand shall be collected and analyzed	8.2.4.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.4.2. Field inspection
8.2.5. Data on the ratio of actual to estimated levels of all types of timber harvest shall be collected	8.2.5.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.5.2. Interviews with stakeholders. 8.2.5.3. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 8.2.5.4. Field inspection
8.2.6. Data on the ratio of <i>selection</i> and <i>multi-stage(shelterwood) cuts</i> to <i>clearcuts</i> by area and its dynamics shall be collected	8.2.6.1. Monitoring and reports records. 8.2.6.2. Field inspection
<b>c) Composition and observed changes in the flora and fauna</b>	
<p>8.2.7. Information permitting to assess the composition of flora and fauna and its changes in relation with the forest management shall be collected and analyzed.</p> <p>Guidance: This indicator does not require collection of information on all species of flora and fauna. Assessments of their condition may be based on the data on changing areas of their basic habitats (forest types, forest communities) or condition of certain species reflecting a wide range of environmental conditions (e.g. big mammals and birds, especially rare) in terms of meeting provisions of criteria 6.3, 6.4, 9.3 and 9.4 (i.e. conservation of biological diversity of species and ecosystems (especially rare) and <i>HCVF</i> and taking measures to prevent uncontrolled dispersal of exotic species). The intensity of monitoring shall correspond to the scale and intensity of management activities. For protected sites where management activities are very limited, general or even qualitative assessment may be sufficient. If protected sites are subject to active forestry operations, this may require a profound analysis of the condition of populations of certain species (see also <i>Collection and Analysis of Information that permits to Assess the Composition and Changes in Flora and Fauna in Relation with Forest Management and Its Purposes</i> in Annex C)</p>	8.2.7.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.7.2. Interviews with stakeholders. 8.2.7.3. Field inspection
8.2.8. Information shall be collected and analyzed with purpose to monitor changes in the	8.2.8.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.8.2. Interviews with stakeholders.

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>populations of <i>rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi</i>.</p> <p>Guidance: Special focus shall be put on species (their habitats) that are most sensitive to forest management activities or part of forest management goals. The list of species to be monitored shall include the minimum required number of species taking into account the findings of 6.1.4. As a rule more intensively managed areas shall have more intensive and detailed monitoring. The organization may on its account collect data on populations of <i>rare, threatened and endangered species</i> or use available information collected within the governmental and other research programs. See also <i>Sample Procedure for Monitoring Harvest Areas with Retained Key Habitats</i> in Annex C</p>	8.2.8.3. Field inspection
<b>d) Environmental and social impacts of harvesting and other operations</b>	
8.2.9. Data on the area of <i>protected sites</i> shall be collected and analyzed by types	8.2.9.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.9.2. Interviews with stakeholders. 8.2.9.3. Field inspection
8.2.10. Data on the current operations on wildlife conservation and improvement of respective habitats shall be collected  Guidance: The indicator is applied only when the certified organization uses techniques on wildlife conservation and improvement of respective habitats	8.2.10.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.10.2. Interviews with stakeholders. 8.2.10.3. Field inspection
8.2.11. Data on the scale and type of forest protection and conservation measures shall be collected and analyzed	8.2.11.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.11.2. Interviews with stakeholders. 8.2.11.3. Field inspection
8.2.12. Data on social impacts of harvesting and other <i>silvicultural operations</i> shall be collected and analyzed	8.2.12.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.12.2. Interviews with stakeholders. 8.2.12.3. Field inspection
<b>e) Costs, productivity, and efficiency of forest management</b>	
8.2.13. Data on the total costs and results of <i>forest management</i> operations shall be collected and analyzed.  Guidance: The results here are understood as the measurable characteristics of forest operations (areas, cubic meters, etc.) and their silvicultural and economic efficiency (for example, survival rate of planted trees, forestry and economic effect of improvement cuttings, etc.)	8.2.13.1. Monitoring records and reports
8.2.14. Findings of research and monitoring activities shall be documented in reports  Guidance: For <i>silvicultural operations</i> , at least a report for the last year of the certificate validity term shall describe the progress in implementation of the long-term forest management program and effectiveness assessment of the corresponding <i>forest regeneration</i> and silvicultural programs implemented during the validity period of the certificate (see 7.1.6)	8.2.14.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.14.2. Research and monitoring reports. 8.2.14.3. Interviews with monitoring staff
8.2.15. Research and monitoring reports shall contain proposals for changes in the monitoring program, additional research and necessary data collection	8.2.15.1. Monitoring records and reports. 8.2.15.2. Proposed changes in the monitoring program, needs for additional research and data collection.

	8.2.15.3. Interviews with monitoring staff
--	--



<b>Criterion 8.3. Documentation shall be provided by the forest manager to enable monitoring and certifying organizations to trace each forest product from its origin, a process known as the “chain of custody”</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
8.3.1. The organization shall have a procedure that permits it to trace each forest product from its origin to the point of sale (chain-of-custody)	8.3.1.1. Procedure for tracing product origin
8.3.2. Documents confirming the origin of all certified products shall be available	8.3.2.1. Sale documents (invoices, freight notes, orders)
8.3.3. Documents related to the shipment and sale of certified material shall contain a certificate code of the organization and FSC claim	8.3.3.1. Sale documents (invoices etc.). 8.3.3.2. Specifications. 8.3.3.3. Accompanying documents
8.3.4. The organization shall keep records of the quantity of certified forest products sold, as well as products sold to the holders of chain-of-custody <i>certificates</i>	8.3.4.1. Sale records. 8.3.4.2. Reports on certified products
8.3.5. All certified forest products in the organization's possession shall be easily identifiable because they bear marks or labels and/or are stored separately from other products	8.3.5.1. Marks or labels on certified wood products in the yard. 8.3.5.2. Separate storage for certified and non-certified wood. 8.3.5.3. Field inspection
<b>Criterion 8.4. The results of monitoring shall be incorporated into the implementation and revision of the management plan</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
8.4.1. Discrepancies between actual and expected results (plans, projections, anticipated impacts) of management activities or natural development of ecosystems discovered during monitoring shall be considered when implementing the <i>forest management plan</i>	8.4.1.1. Monitoring reports. 8.4.1.2. Plan of harvesting and other management activities. 8.4.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers
8.4.2. Discrepancies consistent with 8.4.1 shall be taken into account when revising the <i>forest management plan</i> , policies and operating procedures (see also Criteria 7.2 and 8.2)	8.4.2.1. Monitoring reports. 8.4.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials). 8.4.2.3. Policies and operating procedures. 8.4.2.4. Interviews with organization's managers
<b>Criterion 8.5. While respecting the confidentiality of information, forest managers shall make publicly available a summary of the results of monitoring indicators, including those listed in Criterion 8.2</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
8.5.1. A summary of the monitoring results of parameters consistent with 8.2, except <i>confidential information</i> , shall be available to the public	8.5.1.1. List of confidential information. 8.5.1.2. Publicly available summary of the results of forest management monitoring. 8.5.1.3. Interviews with stakeholders
8.5.2. The organization shall have a procedure for disclosure of non-confidential information about monitoring results to public	8.5.2.1. Procedure of disclosure of non-confidential information. 8.5.2.2. Register of requests

**PRINCIPLE 9: MAINTENANCE OF HIGH CONSERVATION VALUE FORESTS**

**Management activities in high conservation value forests shall maintain or enhance the attributes that define such forests. Decisions regarding high conservation value forests shall always be considered in the context of a precautionary approach**

<b>Criterion 9.1. Assessment to determine the presence of the attributes consistent with High Conservation Value Forests will be completed, appropriate to scale and intensity of forest management</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>9.1.1. It shall be determined whether the forest<sup>23</sup> is an area (ecoregion) characterized by significant biodiversity of global or national importance and/or contains other habitats with high biodiversity (protected areas, important bird areas, wetlands of international importance etc.).</p> <p>Guidance: See <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Categories of HCVF</i></p>	<p>9.1.1.1. WWF Global 200 Ecoregions map, list of existing or planned protected areas, IBA, Ramsar sites and other HCVF occurring in the area being certified.</p> <p>9.1.1.2. Forest inventory and other materials.</p> <p>9.1.1.3. Interviews with experts involved in the identification process.</p> <p>9.1.1.4. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.1.2. It shall be determined whether the forest is part of a large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency (or contains such a landscape).</p> <p>Guidance: See <i>Annex E</i> section <i>Categories of HCVF</i></p>	<p>9.1.2.1. Atlases and/or maps of large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency (intact forest landscapes).</p> <p>9.1.2.2. Forest inventory and other materials.</p> <p>9.1.2.3. Results of surveys in consistency with 9.1.2.1.</p> <p>9.1.2.4. Interviews with those involved in identification process.</p> <p>9.1.2.5. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.1.3. It shall be determined whether the forest contains <i>rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems</i>.</p> <p>Guidance: See further <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Categories of HCVF</i></p>	<p>9.1.3.1. Lists and maps of respective HCVF occurring in the area being certified.</p> <p>9.1.3.2. Forest inventory and other materials.</p> <p>9.1.3.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process.</p> <p>9.1.3.4. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.1.4. It shall be determined whether the forest contains sites that provide basic services of nature in critical situations.</p> <p>Guidance: See further <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Categories of HCVF</i></p>	<p>9.1.4.1. A list and maps of respective HCVF occurring in the area being certified.</p> <p>9.1.4.2. Forest inventory materials.</p> <p>9.1.4.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process.</p> <p>9.1.4.4. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.1.5. It shall be determined whether the forest contains sites of special significance for <i>local communities</i>, including religious, cultural, ecological or economic significance (sites that <i>local people</i> regard as more significant when compared with surrounding forests).</p> <p>Guidance: This shall be done in part not covered by 2.2.3 and 3.3.1. Such areas could be sites actively used for gathering mushrooms and berries and recreation, sites of archeological and historical significance, war memorial sites, mass graves, cemeteries, churches, sacred groves, sacred trees and springs etc. See also <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Categories of HCVF</i></p>	<p>9.1.5.1. A list and maps of respective HCVF occurring in the area.</p> <p>9.1.5.2. Interviews with those involved in identification process.</p> <p>9.1.5.3. Interviews with stakeholders</p>

<sup>23</sup> In all indicators of the Criterion 9.1 “forest” refers to forest areas within the forest management unit(s) being certified.

<b>Criterion 9.2. The consultative portion of the certification process must place emphasis on the identified conservation attributes, and options for the maintenance thereof</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>9.2.1. The organization shall conduct consultations with a wide range of <i>stakeholders</i> to identify, protect and manage <i>HCVF</i>.</p> <p>Guidance: Consultations shall be held with organizations or experts (biologists, game biologists and ethnologists), which declared themselves as <i>stakeholders</i> with respect to a particular <i>HCVF</i> category and/or region (<i>stakeholder</i> lists are available at the National FSC Office, National FSC Initiative and regional working groups). Regarding HCV 5 and 6, consultations shall be held with local active civil society groups (veterans and hunters societies, regional history research groups at libraries and schools, young naturalists groups), as well as with groups most dependant on forest</p>	<p>9.2.1.1. List of stakeholders with indication of HCVF category they are linked to.</p> <p>9.2.1.2. Evidence of consultations (minutes of meetings, correspondence and other records).</p> <p>9.2.1.3. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.2.2. Criteria for identifying and/or mapping each <i>HCVF</i> category shall be prepared with involvement of <i>stakeholders</i> and on the basis of information in 9.2.1.</p> <p>Guidance: Each <i>HCVF</i> category (in some cases even subcategory and level) shall be analyzed separately. The absence of <i>HCVF</i> of a particular category (subcategory, level) shall be justified</p>	<p>9.2.2.1. Documentation collected during stakeholder consultations, agreements with stakeholders.</p> <p>9.2.2.2. Evidence of adoption of stakeholder proposals on protection of HCVF or rationale for rejection of such proposals.</p> <p>9.2.2.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials.</p> <p>9.2.2.4. List of criteria for identification and maps of HCVF.</p> <p>9.2.2.5. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.2.3. A set of measures on <i>HCVF</i> protection and management shall be prepared with involvement of <i>stakeholders</i> and on the basis of information in 9.2.2.</p> <p>Guidance: In a case of dispute regarding <i>HCVF</i> protection and management, the organization shall do all possible for finding a solution acceptable for both parties</p>	<p>9.2.3.1. Documentation collected during stakeholder consultations, agreements with stakeholders.</p> <p>9.2.3.2. Evidence of positive response to stakeholder proposals on HCVF protection or rationale for rejection of such proposals.</p> <p>9.2.3.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), other materials.</p> <p>9.2.3.4. Maps of HCVF and list of measures on their protection or management.</p> <p>9.2.3.5. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.2.4. Identification parameters of <i>HCVF</i> as well as mapped <i>HCVF</i> shall be publicly available</p>	<p>9.2.4.1. Documentation on identification of HCVF, including maps.</p> <p>9.2.4.2. Publicly available printed and web publications, other materials.</p> <p>9.2.4.3. Interviews with stakeholders</p>

<b>Criterion 9.3. The management plan shall include and implement specific measures that ensure the maintenance and/or enhancement of the applicable conservation attributes consistent with the precautionary approach. These measures shall be specifically included in the publicly available management plan summary</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
9.3.1. Provisions of 9.2.2 and 9.2.3 shall be included in the <i>forest management plan</i> , policies and operating guidelines	9.3.1.1. Documentation on identifying and assigning management regimes to HCVF. 9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan), policies and operating guidelines. 9.3.1.3. Interviews with organization's specialists
9.3.2. For each site identified as an area (ecoregion) containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values and/or contains other objects with high biodiversity (important bird areas, wetlands of international importance etc.), a set of measures for biodiversity conservation shall be implemented.  Guidance: See also 9.3.10 and 9.3.11 and <i>Annex E</i> , section <i>Management of HCVF</i>	9.3.2.1. Maps of areas containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, other materials. 9.3.2.2. Set of measures for biodiversity conservation. 9.3.2.3. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials). 9.3.2.4. Operating guidelines. 9.3.2.5. Harvest documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 9.3.2.6. Plans of forest management activities. 9.3.2.7. Interviews with stakeholders. 9.3.2.8. Field inspection
9.3.3. Large forest landscapes minimally disturbed by human agency shall be conserved.  Guidance: Types of human agency that threaten these <i>HCVF</i> see by the example of <i>intact forest landscapes</i> (national level <i>HCVF</i> ). Similar approaches can be used for identifying this <i>HCVF</i> category at the regional level. Approaches to management see <i>Annex E</i> , section <i>Management of HCVF</i>	9.3.3.1. Maps and atlases of large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency (intact forest landscapes). 9.3.3.2. A list of measures to protect such forests. 9.3.3.3. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials). 9.3.3.4. Plan of management activities. 9.3.3.5. Interviews with stakeholders. 9.3.3.6. Field inspection
9.3.4. In cases when a large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency cannot be completely conserved due to specific local social conditions, strict conservation zones completely excluded from road and forestry development activities shall be established at part of its area.  Guidance: See further <i>Annex E</i> , section <i>Management of HCVF</i>	9.3.4.1. Maps and atlases of large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency (intact forest landscapes). 9.3.4.2. Maps of approved strict conservation zones. 9.3.4.3. A list of measures to protect such forests. 9.3.4.4. Evidence of communication with stakeholders, including agreements, meeting minutes and letters. 9.3.4.5. Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials). 9.3.4.6. Plan of management activities. 9.3.4.7. Interviews with stakeholders. 9.3.4.8. Field inspection

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>9.3.5. Strict conservation zones (see 9.3.4) shall be surrounded with buffer zones</p>	<p>9.3.5.1. Maps and atlases of large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency (intact forest landscapes). 9.3.5.2. Maps of approved buffer zones. 9.3.5.3. Evidence of communication with stakeholders, including agreements, meeting minutes and letters. 9.3.5.4. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.3.6. Within the buffer zones (see 9.3.5), best available forestry technologies and practices with regard to conservation of biodiversity and forest ecosystem shall be implemented.</p> <p>Guidance: Such technologies shall include harvesting techniques that <i>mimic natural dynamics</i> of a particular forest type (see 6.3.5) and provide maximum preservation of forest environment and its patchiness, <i>key habitats</i> (see 6.2), <i>key stand elements</i> (6.3.9–6.3.14), as well as <i>HCVF</i> (9.1). See <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Management of HCVF</i></p>	<p>9.3.6.1. Maps and atlases of large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency (intact forest landscapes). 9.3.6.2. Maps of approved buffer zones, protocols of agreements with stakeholders. 9.3.6.3. A list of measures to protect such forests. 9.3.6.4. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials). 9.3.6.5. Plan of management activities. 9.3.6.6. Interviews with stakeholders. 9.3.6.7. Field inspection</p>
<p>9.3.7. <i>Rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems</i> shall be conserved through complete or partial restriction of forestry operations in them.</p> <p>Guidance: See <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Management of HCVF</i></p>	<p>9.3.7.1. Maps of rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems if available. 9.3.7.2. A list of measures to protect such ecosystems, which includes prohibited activities. 9.3.7.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials). 9.3.7.4. Plan of management activities. 9.3.7.5. Interviews with stakeholders. 9.3.7.6. Field inspection</p>
<p>9.3.8. Measures to maintain or strengthen the conservation values of forest areas providing basic services of nature in critical situations shall be implemented.</p> <p>Guidance: See <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Management of HCVF</i></p>	<p>9.3.8.1. Maps of forest areas providing basic services of nature in critical situations if available. 9.3.8.2. A list of measures to protect such areas. 9.3.8.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials). 9.3.8.4. Plan of management activities. 9.3.8.5. Interviews with stakeholders. 9.3.8.6. Field inspection</p>
<p>9.3.9. Measures to protect conservation values of forest areas which are critical for the <i>local people</i>, including areas of special religious, cultural, ecological or economic significance, shall be implemented.</p> <p>Guidance: This shall be done in part not covered by indicators 3.3.2–3.3.5. See further <i>Annex E</i>, section <i>Management of HCVF</i></p>	<p>9.3.9.1. Maps of forest areas which are critical to local people, including areas of special religious, cultural, ecological or economic significance. 9.3.9.2. A list of measures to protect such areas. 9.3.9.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials). 9.3.9.4. Plan of management activities. 9.3.9.5. Interviews with local communities and/or indigenous peoples groups. 9.3.9.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or specialists on regional history. 9.3.9.7. Field inspection</p>

## Russian National FSC Standard

<p>9.3.10. Conservation or management restrictions (regime) in <i>protected nature areas</i> shall be observed.</p> <p>Guidance: Observation of the regime implies that <i>forest management</i> in such a <i>protected area</i> shall ensure preservation of those conservation values, for protection of which it was established as well as protection of any other <i>HCVF</i> within the <i>protected area</i>. See <i>Annex D</i></p>	<p>9.3.10.1. Materials on existing protected nature areas, including maps.</p> <p>9.3.10.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials).</p> <p>9.3.10.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>9.3.10.4. Plan of management activities.</p> <p>9.3.10.5. Interviews with stakeholders.</p> <p>9.3.10.6. Field inspection</p>
<p>9.3.11. Measures to maintain the high conservation values of candidate and proposed areas shall be implemented based on the supposed borders and protection regimes.</p> <p>Guidance: See Annex D for guidance on candidate and proposed protected areas. The management regime in the proposed areas shall be agreed with the stakeholder, which suggested establishing such protected areas. The management regime applied within the borders of candidate protected areas shall be regulated by the relevant environmental authority responsible issuing official approval of such protected areas</p>	<p>9.3.11.1. Materials on candidate areas, including maps.</p> <p>9.3.11.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya lesov (forest management plan, other materials).</p> <p>9.3.11.3. Interviews with organization's managers.</p> <p>9.3.11.4. Plan of management activities.</p> <p>9.3.11.5. Interviews with stakeholders.</p> <p>9.3.11.6. Field inspection</p>
<p>9.3.12. The Public Summary of the <i>forest management plan</i> shall contain plans of <i>HCVF</i> conservation and management</p>	<p>9.3.12.1. Plans of <i>HCVF</i> conservation and management.</p> <p>9.3.12.2. The summary of the forest management plan is available to public.</p> <p>9.3.12.3. Public summary, printed and web publications are available.</p> <p>9.3.12.4. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.3.13. The Public Summary of the <i>forest management plan</i> shall contain information of the extent to which <i>HCVF</i> are protected within the network of <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i> (see Criterion 6.4, including those in <i>protected areas, protective forests</i> and <i>OZU</i>)</p>	<p>9.3.13.1. The Public Summary of the forest management plan.</p> <p>9.3.13.2. Maps.</p> <p>9.3.13.3. Interviews with stakeholders</p>
<p>9.3.14. The organization shall have a procedure for disclosure of non-confidential information regarding <i>HCVF</i>, including their detailed maps and measures for conservation and management.</p> <p>Guidance: Public availability of the Public Summary of the <i>forest management plan</i> is regulated by 7.4.1</p>	<p>9.3.14.1. Procedure for disclosure of non-confidential information.</p> <p>9.3.14.2. Register of requests</p>

<b>Criterion 9.4. Annual monitoring shall be conducted to assess the effectiveness of the measures employed to maintain or enhance the applicable conservation attributes</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
9.4.1. The effectiveness of the measures employed to maintain or enhance the characteristics of <i>HCVF</i> shall be determined on the basis of findings of annual monitoring.  Guidance: See also guidance to 8.2.7 and 8.2.8	9.4.1.1. Records of annual monitoring. 9.4.1.2. Forest inventory materials, other materials. 9.4.1.3. Field inspection
9.4.2. The organization shall submit materials required for regular and independent monitoring of the condition of the <i>HCVF</i> (description of borders and/or maps of lease, <i>HCVF</i> , <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i> etc.) to <i>stakeholders</i> on request	9.4.2.1. Evidence of correspondence and meetings with stakeholders on this issue. 9.4.2.2. Interviews with organization's managers. 9.4.2.3. Interviews with stakeholders

## PRINCIPLE 10: PLANTATIONS

**Plantations shall be planned and managed in accordance with Principles and Criteria 1–9 and Principle 10 and its Criteria. While plantations can provide an array of social and economic benefits, and can contribute to satisfying the world's needs for forest products, they should complement the management of, reduce pressures on, and promote the restoration and conservation of natural forests**

<b>Criterion 10.1. The management objectives of the plantation, including natural forest conservation and restoration objectives, shall be explicitly stated in the management plan, and clearly demonstrated in the implementation of the plan</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
10.1.1. The organization shall have a <i>long-term</i> (for a <i>rotation period</i> ) plan of establishing and maintaining the <i>plantation</i> , which contains management objectives, including conservation and/or restoration of natural forests.  Guidance: Areas for conservation of natural biodiversity and/or restoration of natural forest should be in close proximity to the <i>plantation</i>	10.1.1.1. OVOS and/or environmental expertise (ekologicheskaya ekspertiza) of the management plan. 10.1.1.2. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.1.1.3. Plan of conservation of natural biodiversity and/or restoration of natural forest. 10.1.1.4. Interviews with organization's managers. 10.1.1.5. Field inspection
10.1.2. Annual plan of management activities for the <i>plantation</i> and areas designed for conservation of natural biodiversity and/or restoration of natural forest shall be consistent with the <i>long-term</i> goals	10.1.2.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.1.2.2. Annual plan of management activities. 10.1.2.3. Interviews with organization's managers
10.1.3. The plan consistent with 10.1.1 shall be implemented	10.1.3.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.1.3.2. Annual plan of management activities. 10.1.3.3. Interviews with organization's managers. 10.1.3.4. Field inspection

<b>Criterion 10.2. The design and layout of plantations should promote the protection, restoration and conservation of natural forests, and not increase pressures on natural forests. Wildlife corridors, streamside zones and a mosaic of stands of different ages and rotation periods shall be used in the layout of the plantation, consistent with the scale of the operation. The scale and layout of plantation blocks shall be consistent with the patterns of forest stands found within the natural landscape</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
<p>10.2.1. The design and location of the <i>plantations</i> shall promote protection, maintenance and when necessary restoration of ecological and social values of natural forests in this area.</p> <p>Guidance: This can be achieved e.g. through establishment or protection of <i>water protection zones</i>, <i>key habitats</i> and corridors for wildlife and plants inside the <i>plantations</i>. See also 10.3.1, which requires the diversity in the composition of plantations by varying the size, spatial distribution and structure (their age, composition etc.)</p>	<p>10.2.1.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation.</p> <p>10.2.1.2. Maps showing plantations, natural forests, water protection zones, key habitats and ecological corridors.</p> <p>10.2.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers and/or plantation designer.</p> <p>10.2.1.4. Field inspection</p>
<p>10.2.2. The size and layout of particular <i>management units</i> of the <i>plantations</i> shall be designed taking into account the structure of the natural ecosystems in the area</p>	<p>10.2.2.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation.</p> <p>10.2.2.2. Maps showing plantations, natural forests, water protection zones, key habitats and ecological corridors.</p> <p>10.2.2.3. Interviews with organization's managers and/or plantation designer.</p> <p>10.2.2.4. Field inspection</p>
<p>10.2.3. <i>Plantations</i> shall be established, whenever possible, in areas disturbed by human activity in the past and where natural forest regeneration is impossible (see also 6.1.1, 6.3.3 and 6.3.4)</p>	<p>10.2.3.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation.</p> <p>10.2.3.2. Field inspection</p>



**Russian National FSC Standard**

***Criterion 10.3. Diversity in the composition of plantations is preferred, so as to enhance economic, ecological and social stability. Such diversity may include the size and spatial distribution of management units within the landscape, number and genetic composition of species, age classes and structures***

<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
10.3.1. Monotony in the composition of <i>plantations</i> shall be prevented by creating <i>management units</i> different in size, spatial distribution and structure (age, composition etc.)	10.3.1.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.3.1.2. Field inspection
10.3.2. The design of the <i>plantations</i> shall take into account landscape peculiarities and needs of local people (e.g. hunting, fishing and collection of berries, mushrooms and nuts)	10.3.2.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.3.2.2. Interviews with local communities. 10.3.2.3. Interviews with stakeholders. 10.3.2.4. Field inspection

**Criterion 10.4.** *The selection of species for planting shall be based on their overall suitability for the site and their appropriateness to the management objectives. In order to enhance the conservation of biological diversity, native species are preferred over exotic species in the establishment of plantations and the restoration of degraded ecosystems. Exotic species, which shall be used only when their performance is greater than that of native species, shall be carefully monitored to detect unusual mortality, disease, or insect outbreaks and adverse ecological impacts*

Indicators	Means of verification
10.4.1. The organization shall monitor increment, growing stock and condition of tree species used in the <i>plantations</i>	10.4.1.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.4.1.2. Records of monitoring. 10.4.1.3. Field inspection
10.4.2. The use of <i>exotic species</i> shall be limited to nurseries where seedlings and Christmas trees can be produced for sale	10.4.2.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.4.2.2. Interviews with organization's specialists. 10.4.2.3. Field inspection
10.4.3. The organization shall monitor <i>exotic species</i> to detect their invasiveness, unusual mortality, disease or pest outbreaks and adverse environmental impacts on local natural ecosystems	10.4.3.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.4.3.2. Records of monitoring. 10.4.3.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 10.4.3.4. Field inspection
10.4.4. When adverse impacts of <i>exotic species</i> on the environment are discovered (see 10.4.3), relevant measures to eliminate these implications shall be taken	10.4.4.1. Monitoring reports. 10.4.4.2. Records of the use of measures to eliminate adverse impacts of exotic species. 10.4.4.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 10.4.4.4. Field inspection

**Criterion 10.5.** *A proportion of the overall forest management area, appropriate to the scale of the plantation and to be determined in regional standards, shall be managed so as to restore the site to a natural forest cover*

Indicators	Means of verification
10.5.1. The share of <i>plantations</i> within the forest management unit being certified shall not exceed 10%	10.5.1.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.5.1.2. Field inspection
10.5.2. When establishing <i>plantations</i> , the organization shall manage the equivalent area of degraded or deforested lands (if any) within the forest management unit being certified to restore natural forest cover.  Guidance: This does not apply to <i>plantations</i> established on lands degraded or deforested for reasons for which the organization is not responsible (see 6.3.3, 6.3.4 and 10.2.3)	10.5.2.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.5.2.2. Evidences that the organization is not responsible for degradation of lands. 10.5.2.3. Field inspection

**Russian National FSC Standard**

<b>Criterion 10.6. Measures shall be taken to maintain or improve soil structure, fertility, and biological activity. The techniques and rate of harvesting, road and trail construction and maintenance, and the choice of species shall not result in long term soil degradation or adverse impacts on water quality, quantity or substantial deviation from stream course drainage patterns</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
10.6.1. The impact of <i>plantation</i> management on soil condition shall be monitored	10.6.1.1. Records of soil condition monitoring. 10.6.1.2. Field inspection
10.6.2. The impact of <i>plantation</i> management on water quality and quantity and water discharge pattern shall be monitored	10.6.2.1. Records of water condition monitoring. 10.6.2.2. Field inspection
10.6.3. Requirements to road construction and maintenance as well as to management operations in <i>plantations</i> within the forest management unit being certified shall be the same as elsewhere on the forest areas (see 6.5.1–6.5.8, 6.5.10)	10.6.3.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.6.3.2. See relevant verifiers to 6.5.1–6.5.8, 6.5.10. 10.6.3.3. Field inspection
10.6.4. Establishment of <i>plantations</i> in <i>water protection zones</i> shall be prohibited	10.6.4.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.6.4.2. Field inspection

<b>Criterion 10.7. Measures shall be taken to prevent and minimize outbreaks of pests, diseases, fire and invasive plant introductions. Integrated pest management shall form an essential part of the management plan, with primary reliance on prevention and biological control methods rather than chemical pesticides and fertilizers. Plantation management should make every effort to move away from chemical pesticides and fertilizers, including their use in nurseries. The use of chemicals is also covered in Criteria 6.6 and 6.7</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
10.7.1. The fire management plan shall be implemented	10.7.1.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation, including fire management. 10.7.1.2. Dynamics of areas affected by fires 10.7.1.3. Field inspection
10.7.2. Integrated <i>pest and disease management</i> consistent with the requirements of Criteria 6.6–6.8 shall be implemented to prevent <i>pest</i> and disease outbreaks.  Guidance: Thus, preventive and biological control methods shall have preference over chemical <i>pesticides</i> and <i>fertilizers</i>	10.7.2.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation, including pest and disease management. 10.7.2.2. List of measures of pest and disease management. 10.7.2.3. Register of records of the use of pesticides and fertilizers. 10.7.2.4. Dynamics of pest-affected areas. 10.7.2.5. Interviews with organization's specialists. 10.7.2.6. Field inspection

### Russian National FSC Standard

10.7.3. The organization shall use <i>fertilizers</i> , including their use in nurseries, when this is required by soil and plant conditions, so that this shall not pose a threat to nearby natural ecosystems (e.g. does not lead to eutrophication of rivers, lakes and bogs)	10.7.3.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.7.3.2. List of fertilizers used. 10.7.3.3. Register of records of the use of pesticides and fertilizers. 10.7.3.4. Justification of the need to use fertilizers. 10.7.3.5. Results of monitoring of condition of nearby ecosystems. 10.7.3.6. Interviews with organization's specialists. 10.7.3.7. Field inspection
--	---

<b>Criterion 10.8. Appropriate to the scale and diversity of the operation, monitoring of plantations shall include regular assessment of potential on-site and off-site ecological and social impacts, (e.g. natural regeneration, effects on water resources and soil fertility, and impacts on local welfare and social well-being), in addition to those elements addressed in principles 8, 6 and 4. No species should be planted on a large scale until local trials and/or experience have shown that they are ecologically well-adapted to the site, are not invasive, and do not have significant negative ecological impacts on other ecosystems. Special attention will be paid to social issues of land acquisition for plantations, especially the protection of local rights of ownership, use or access</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
10.8.1. The organization, in addition to requirements of Principles 8 and 6, shall monitor on-site and off-site environmental impacts of the <i>plantations</i> (e.g. natural <i>regeneration</i> , invasiveness of <i>exotic species</i> , effects on water resources and soil fertility)	10.8.1.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.8.1.2. Records of monitoring and operating procedures. 10.8.1.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 10.8.1.4. Field inspection
10.8.2. The organization, in addition to requirements of Principles 8 and 4, shall monitor the on-site and off-site impacts of the <i>plantations</i> on local welfare and social well-being of the <i>local people</i>	10.8.2.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.8.2.2. Materials of assessment of social impacts. 10.8.2.3. Interviews with organization's specialists. 10.8.2.4. Interviews with local people
10.8.3. Before planting <i>exotic species</i> on a large scale (see also 10.4.3), local trials and/or scientific experience should show that these are ecologically well-adapted to the site, are not invasive and do not have significant negative ecological impacts on other ecosystems	10.8.3.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.8.3.2. Materials of scientific publications on the ecology and use of these exotic species. 10.8.3.3. Materials of field trials. 10.8.3.4. Interviews with organization's specialists. 10.8.3.5. Field inspection
10.8.4. The organization monitors how land acquisition for <i>plantations</i> affected social issues, especially the protection of local people's rights of ownership, use or access	10.8.4.1. Plan of establishment and management of the plantation. 10.8.4.2. Materials of assessment of social implications. 10.8.4.3. Interviews with local authorities. 10.8.4.4. Interviews with local people
<b>Criterion 10.9. Plantations established in areas converted from natural forests after November 1994 normally shall not qualify for certification. Certification may be allowed in circumstances where sufficient evidence is submitted to the certification body that the manager/owner is not responsible directly or indirectly of such conversion</b>	
<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Means of verification</b>
10.9.1. For <i>plantations</i> established in areas converted from natural forests after November 1994, the manner of their establishment and the reasons that required conversion of natural forest shall be documented	10.9.1.1. Documented historic evidence, forest inventory materials. 10.9.1.2. Maps. 10.9.1.3. Interviews with organization's managers
10.9.2. When establishing <i>plantations</i> (since November 1994), requirements of Criterion 6.10 shall be observed otherwise the current manager or leaseholder shall not be responsible for planting	10.9.2.1. Documented historic evidence, forest inventory materials. 10.9.2.2. Maps. 10.9.2.3. Interviews with organization's managers

## **Annex A. Basic Laws and Administrative Regulations in Forest Management and Environment Protection<sup>24</sup>**

### **Land Code of the Russian Federation, No. 136-FZ, October 25, 2001**

The Land Code regulates relations in the sphere of the use and protection of lands implying that land is a natural body, protected as a critically important part of nature, a natural resource used in agriculture, forestry and management and other activities, as well as real estate, ownership and other rights to the land.

### **Urban Planning Code of the Russian Federation, No. 190-FZ, December 29, 2004**

The Urban Planning Code regulates relations in the sphere of development, urban planning and growth, maintenance of urban and rural populated areas, development of engineering, transportation and social infrastructure, rational use of natural resource and protection of historical and cultural heritage and environment.

### **Water Code of the Russian Federation, No.74-FZ, June 3, 2006**

The Water Code regulates relations in the sphere of the use of water resources and protection of water bodies. Proprietary issues related to the trade in water bodies are regulated by civil laws in part not covered by the Water Code. The Water Code prescribes establishment of water and coastal protection zones with a width ranging from 50 to 500 m along all water bodies. Clearcuts inside the water protection zones and coastal protection zones are prohibited.

### **Forest Code of the Russian Federation, No. 200-FZ, December 4, 2006**

The Forest Code and regulations thereunder regulate relations in the sphere of the use, protection, conservation and regeneration of forest resources. The Code prescribes that harvesting of forest resources cannot be undertaken by governmental agencies and local authorities as well as use on a paid basis. Leaseholders are fully responsible for forest management planning and use of forest resources, silviculture and reforestation within the lease.

### **Federal Law on Protected Nature Areas, No. 33-FZ, March 14, 1995 (edited on December 29, 2004)**

The Federal Law on Protected Nature Areas regulates relations in the sphere of organization, protection and use of protected areas to conserve unique and typical natural landscapes and features, natural landmarks, plants and animals and genetic resources as well as to research natural processes in the biosphere, monitor its changes and deliver environmental education.

### **Federal Law on Wildlife No. 52-FZ, April 24, 1995 (edited on December 29, 2004)**

Federal law *on Wildlife* regulates relations in the sphere of protection and use of wildlife and habitat protection to maintain biodiversity, provide sustainable use of all its components and conserve wildlife and its genetic fund as an essential element of the environment.

### **Federal Law on State Ecological Expertise [Environmental Impact Assessment] No. 174-FZ, November 23, 1995 (edited on December 29, 2004) (with amendments effective from January 1, 2007)**

---

<sup>24</sup> This Annex is provided for information only and contains examples of sources of information. Text marked with “Information for consideration”, is not compulsory and given by way of example.

### Russian National FSC Standard

The Federal Law *on State Environmental Expertise [Environmental Impact Assessment]* specifies the procedure for ecological expertise. The state ecological expertise (SEE) of the compliance of planned activities with the laws of the Russian Federation is an essential element of environmental assessment, without which any planned activities are prohibited. According to amendments made to the Federal Law *on State Ecological Expertise* effective from January 1, 2007, plans for the use of water and forest resources, including forest survey materials, are no longer subject to SEIA. The new Forest Code prescribes (Article 89) that *proekts osvoeniya lesov* are subject to state expertise according to the procedure established by the relevant federal agency. However, there is no clarity yet on what would be assessed under this procedure.

When the law prescribes obtaining positive SEE opinion prior to implementing forest management, the applicant shall add materials of the environmental impact assessment (OVOS) of planned activities to the documents pack submitted for ecological expertise. In this case, OVOC performance is regulated by the Federal Law *on State Ecological Expertise*.

A set of key documents for the Federal Law *on State Ecological Expertise* includes:

- Resolution of the Government of the Russian Federation *on Adopting the Procedure of State Ecological Expertise*, No. 698, June 11, 1996;
- Order of the State Committee for Environment Protection of the Russian Federation *on Adopting the Regulations for Assessing the Environment Impact Caused by Planned Management and Other Activities in the Russian Federation*, No. 372 of May 16, 2000.

OVOS in indicators of Criterion 6.1 does not mean the OVOS procedure as per the Federal Law *on Ecological Expertise* and the Resolution of National Environmental Protection Committee of the Russian Federation of May 16 2000 No.372 (see Annex A). The organization may use these regulations as a basis for its own OVOS procedure. OVOS may be performed by the organization itself, the author of the forest management plan (or parts thereof) or a third party.

**Federal Law *on Environment Protection* No. 174-FZ, November 23, 2002 (Edition of May 08, 2009, No. 93-FZ, with amendments introduced by No. 314-FZ of December 17, 2009)**

Federal Law *on Environment Protection* specifies the legal basis of the national policy on environment protection to ensure balanced solution of socio-economic issues, to conserve favorable environment, protect biodiversity and natural resources in order to satisfy the needs of the present and future generations, and to provide environment law enforcement and environment safety.

## Annex B. International Environment Agreements Ratified by Russia and Basic Conventions of the International Labour Organization<sup>25</sup>

### Conventions of the International Labour Organization<sup>26</sup>

The International Labour Organization emerged with the League of Nations in 1919. It was founded to express the growing concern for social reform after World War I, and the conviction that any reform had to be conducted at an international level.

After World War II, a dynamic restatement and enlargement of ILO's basic goals and principles was made in the Declaration of Philadelphia. In 1946, ILO became the first specialized agency associated with the newly formed United Nations Organization.

ILO sets international labor standards in the form of conventions and recommendations, providing minimum requirements to basic human rights (freedom of association, the right to organize and bargain collectively, the abolition of forced labor and child labor, and the elimination of discrimination in employment), labor administration, industrial relations, employment policy, working conditions, social security, occupational safety and health, employment of women etc.

ILO has a unique tripartite structure within the United Nations, in which employers' and workers' representatives have an equal voice with those of governments.

Russia ratified several ILO conventions. Some of them are important for meeting the requirements of FSC responsible forest stewardship:

1. ILO 29: *Forced Labour Convention*, 1930 (the USSR participates since 1956);
2. ILO 87: *Freedom of Association and Protection of the Right to Organize Convention*, 1948 (since 1956);
3. ILO 98: *Right to Organize and Collective Bargaining Convention*, 1949 (since 1956);
4. ILO 100: *Equal Remuneration Convention*, 1951 (since 1956);
5. ILO 105: *Abolition of Forced Labour Convention*, 1957 (since 1998);
6. ILO 111: *Discrimination (Employment and Occupation) Convention*, 1958 (since 1961);
7. ILO 138 *Minimum Age Convention*, 1973 (since 1979) (minimum age is specified at 16 years);
8. ILO 142: *Human Resources Development Convention*, 1975 (since 1979);
9. ILO 155: *Occupation Safety and Health Convention*, 1981 (since 1998);
10. ILO 182; *Worst Forms of Child Labour Convention* (1999) (since 2003).

ILO conventions (in Russian) can be found on the website of ILO Subregional Office for Eastern Europe and Central Asia: [http://www.ilo.ru/about\\_ru.htm](http://www.ilo.ru/about_ru.htm).

Countries, which signed the convention, shall make their national and regional labor and employment laws being in compliance with ILO standards.

Activities of the certified organization shall comply with FSC-POL-30-401 *FSC certification and the ILO conventions*.

According to the decision by FSC Board, all certificate holders shall comply with ILO conventions, even if the country did not ratify the conventions. The following ILO labor conventions are relevant for forestry operations and practices: 29, 87, 97 *Migration for Employment (Revised) Convention* (1949), 98, 100, 105, 111, 131 *Minimum Wage Fixing Convention* (1970), 138, 141 *Rural Workers' Organizations Convention* (1975), 142, 143 *Migrant Workers (Supplementary Provisions) Convention* (1975), 155, 169 *Indigenous and Tribal Peoples Convention* (1989) and 182; and *The ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work* (2001) ([www.ilo.org/public/russian/region/eurpro/moscow/info/publ/forest.pdf](http://www.ilo.org/public/russian/region/eurpro/moscow/info/publ/forest.pdf)) and 135 *Minimum Wage Fixing Recommendation* (1970). The *ILO Code of Practice* is not a legal instrument, but it provides authoritative guidance on forest work.

### Convention on Biological Diversity

<sup>25</sup> This Annex is provided for information only and contains examples of sources of information.

<sup>26</sup> Guidance on how to comply with FSC requirements regarding ILO Conventions is contained in FSC-POL-30-401 *FSC certification and the ILO conventions*.



## Russian National FSC Standard

FSC Criterion 1.3 demands to adhere to the provisions of binding international conventions, such as the *Convention on Biological Diversity* (CBD). CBD was signed in Rio de Janeiro (Brazil) in June, 1992. Russia signed the Convention on June 13, 1992, and ratified it by the federal law No. 16-FZ, February 17, 1995.

CBD has three main targets: 1) the conservation of biological diversity, 2) the sustainable use of biological resources, and 3) the fair and equal sharing of benefits arising out of the use of biodiversity resources. Some provisions of the Convention are directly covered by laws of the Russian Federation. FSC Principles 6–8 are designed to ensure the meeting of CBD requirements.

### Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, Especially as Waterfowl Habitat

Russia is a party to the *Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, Especially as Waterfowl Habitat* (adopted in Ramsar on February 2, 1971), also known as the Ramsar Convention. Under the Convention, some wetlands in Russia were granted with the Ramsar status. In accordance with the Land Code (Article 97), valuable wetlands may be considered as nature conservation lands, where site-disturbing operations may be considerably limited while encouraging conservation actions. A decision to grant such status to a wetland is taken by the Government of the Russian Federation if the Secretariat of the Convention decides that the area nominated in accordance with the established procedure meets the relevant criteria.

### Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage

*The Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage* was adopted by UNESCO in Paris (France) on November 16, 1972. The Convention was ratified by the Decree of the Presidium of the Supreme Soviet of the USSR No. 8595-XI of March 9, 1988. It is aimed primarily at conserving and popularizing landmarks of high importance for the humankind. The World Heritage Committee established as a follow-up of the Convention was charged to organize the protection and popularization of World Heritage Sites and to keep a list of properties having outstanding universal value from the historical, cultural, scientific, aesthetic, conservation, or natural beauty points of view and *The List of World Heritage in Danger*. World Heritage Sites consist of various level protected areas.

### Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES)

FSC Criterion 1.3 demands to fulfill to the provisions of binding international conventions, such as the *Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora* (CITES). CITES was signed in Washington DC (USA), March 3 1973.

Its aim is to exercise control of international trade in specimens of wild animals and plants whose number has been undermined or can be undermined because they are popular objects of trade. CITES entered into force in 1975. The USSR joined it in 1976. The Russian Federation as the successor of the USSR is a Party to the Convention since 1992.

To protect rare species of animals and plants, the Convention controls their movement across borders between countries that are CITES Parties. The species covered by CITES are listed in three Appendices. Commercial trade in specimens listed in *Appendix I* is prohibited (although there are some exceptions). International trade in specimens listed in *Appendix II* is permitted but they may be imported or exported only if the appropriate document issued by the national Administrative body of CITES designated by the Governments of the signatory countries has been obtained. In Russia, this function is performed by the Ministry of Natural Resources (in case of sturgeon, the Federal Agency for Fisheries of the Ministry of Agriculture). The List of mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, fish, invertebrates and plants whose export, re-export and import are regulated by the CITES was adopted by the 12th meeting of the Conference of the Parties (Santiago, November 2002).

In Russia, species under CITES are either included in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (e.g. ginseng *Panax ginseng*, golden eagle *Aquila chrysaetos*, saker falcon *Falco cherrug*, Amur tiger *Panthera tigris altaica*) or are less rare species the illegal hunting of which thrives (eagle owl *Bubo bubo*, Siberian musk deer *Moschus moschiferus*, brown bear *Ursus arctos*, grey wolf *Canis lupus*).

**Russian National FSC Standard**  
**United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change**

The *UN Framework Convention on Climate Change* was adopted at the UN's Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro (Brazil) in 1992. Its aim is to prevent global climate change which is directly or indirectly caused by human activity, by controlling atmospheric concentrations of greenhouse gases. The Kyoto Protocol to the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change was adopted in Kyoto (Japan), December 11 1997 and has signed by Russia in New York, March 11, 1999. The Kyoto Protocol determines the level of greenhouse gases emissions to be reduced by each Party. In accordance with the Protocol, developed countries shall reduce emissions of carbon dioxide and five more greenhouse gases by 5.2% compared to the level of 1990. This figure shall be reached from 2008 or 2012, at the latest. Russia ratified the Kyoto Protocol on November 4, 2004.

Responsible forest management can contribute to solving this problem. By affecting carbon flows in the biosphere, depending on its condition, forest can both accumulate and emit greenhouse gases. It is important that a certified area contributes on the whole to the accumulation of organic carbon. This objective is also achieved by meeting Criteria 6.10 (restricting forest conversion to forest plantations or non-forest land uses), indicators of Criterion 6.5 (keeping erosion to a minimum), as well as indicators of criteria 6.3 and 8.2 which require ensuring timely forest regeneration.

**Pan-European Biological and Landscape Diversity Strategy**

The Pan-European Biological and Landscape Diversity Strategy (PEBLDS) was adopted at the 3rd *Environment for Europe* Conference of Ministers of the Environment (Sofia, 1995). PEBLDS is declared as a European contribution to the implementation of the *Convention on Biological Diversity* (1992).

The Strategy is aimed at protection of biological and landscape diversity in Europe. Its objectives include:

- conservation, enhancement and restoration of key ecosystems, habitats, species and landscape features through creation and effective management of the Pan-European Ecological Network; and
- sustainable management and use of the positive potential of Europe's biological and landscape diversity through making optimum use of social and economic opportunities at the local, national and regional levels.

PEBLDS does not aim to introduce new legislation or programs, but to integrate all initiatives concerning the biological and landscape diversity in the common Pan-European approach. The legal framework for PEBLDS is constituted by widely recognized international agreements and treaties, including the aforementioned ones. The Russian Federation also ratified the *Memorandums of Understanding Concerning Conservation Measures for the Slender-billed Curlew and Siberian Crane* under the *Bonn Convention*.

The Declaration of the Third Ministerial *Environment for Europe* Conference set a task to contribute to environment conservation both within and outside protected areas through creation and effective management of the Pan-European Ecological Network – a physical network of core areas and other natural objects connected by corridors and supported by buffer zones to facilitate the dispersal and migration of species.

The Kyiv Resolution on Biodiversity (2003) set Objectives 4 and 5 concerning the Pan-European Ecological Network:

- “4. By 2006, the Pan-European Ecological Network (core areas, restoration areas, corridors and buffer zones, as appropriate) in all States of the Pan-European region will be identified and reflected on coherent indicative European maps, as a European contribution towards a global ecological network.
5. By 2008, all core areas of the Pan-European Ecological Network will be adequately conserved and the Pan European Ecological Network will give guidance to all major national, regional and international land use and planning policies as well as to the operations of relevant economic and financial sectors.”

## Annex C. Protection of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi and Biological Diversity Consistent with 6.2 and 6.3<sup>27</sup>

### Red Data Book of the Russian Federation

**FSC Criterion 6.2** prescribes that the “Safeguards shall exist which protect rare, threatened and endangered species and their habitats (e.g. nesting and feeding areas). Conservation zones and protection areas shall be established, appropriate to the scale and intensity of forest management and the uniqueness of the affected resources. Inappropriate hunting, fishing, trapping and collecting shall be controlled.”

#### Information for consideration

The list of rare, threatened and endangered species may be drawn out for international, national and regional levels. The IUCN–World Conservation Union’s Red Data Book has been historically the first in a series of such publications. It was prepared for the first time in 1963 and immediately received recognition at the international level by many national governments. The species list in the IUCN Red Data Book is regularly updated (Baillie *et al*, 2004). Species included in the *IUCN Red List of Threatened Species* shall be also protected at the national level.

Russia is considering ratification (adoption, approval and joining) of two conventions related to conservation of European species and currently participates in their work on issues relating to its competence. These are the *Convention on the Conservation of European Wildlife and Natural Habitats* (Bern Convention) and the *Convention on Migratory Species* (Bonn Convention).

Russia has also signed several bilateral agreements on environment protection, in particular on protection of migratory birds, with the USA, India, North Korea, Republic of Korea, Japan etc.

Besides, lists of rare, threatened and endangered species can cover a particular biogeographical region. An example is the, well-known is the *Red Data Book of Eastern Fennoscandia* (Kotiranta *et al*, 1998) compiled by Finnish and Russian experts for Finland, Murmansk Oblast, Republic of Karelia and the northern part of Leningrad Oblast.

The volume of the *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (Animals)* was published in 2001. The volume of the *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (Plants)* was published in 2008. The list of species included into the Red Data Book of Russia is set by an authorized executive agency of the Russian Federation. The effective list of red-listed species is approved by the order of the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation of October 25, 2005, No. 289 *On Approval of Lists of Flora Items Included into and Excluded from the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation* (as of June 1, 2005) and order of State National Environmental Protection Committee of the Russian Federation of October 19, 1997, No. 569 *On Approval of Flora Items Included into and Excluded from the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation*.

It is worth noting that according to the decree of the government of the Russian Federation No. 952 of August 13, 1996, Russia joined the *Agreement on the Book on Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Animals and Plants – The Red Data Book of CIS Countries*.

The *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation* lists rare, threatened and endangered species of animals, plants and fungi which are native to and temporarily or permanently occur in the wild on the territory, continental shelf or marine economic zone of the Russian Federation and which require special governmental and legal actions within the competence of the executive authorities. Keeping and publishing the *Red Data Book* Russia performs part of its obligations within the framework of the *Convention on Biological Diversity* (adopted in 1992 in Rio de Janeiro).

#### Information for consideration

<sup>27</sup> Sections *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation*, *Regional Red Data Books*, *Other Legal Basis for Protection of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Animals, Plants and Fungi* and *List of Publications on Red Data Books* are given in this annex for information only and contain examples of information sources. Section “Key Habitats consistent with 6.2 and 6.3” and sections beginning with words “Guidance statements are intended to help the forest manager and the certification body to understand how the indicator should be applied in practice. This does not mean that guidance statements contain a conclusive list of information sources and application guidance statements cover all variety of cases. The lists of objects or procedures beginning with words “sample”, as well as text accompanied by “Information for consideration” phrase are not compulsory and are given by way of example.

The *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation* adopts six categories which classify all taxa and populations by risk of extinction:

- 0 – most likely extinct;
- 1 – endangered;
- 2 – reducing in number;
- 3 – rare;
- 4 – with uncertain status; and
- 5 – recovered and recovering.

The category of most likely extinct includes taxa and populations which historically occurred at the area of the Russian Federation but whose occurrence in the wild has not been confirmed (for invertebrates, for the last 100 years and for vertebrates, for the last 50 years). Endangered species are those taxa and populations whose numbers reduced down to the critical level so that they may become extinct in the nearest future. Species reducing in number include taxa and populations characterized by a continuing decline in number so that they may shortly enter the category of endangered species. Taxa and populations are considered rare if they are small in number and/or occur only within the limited area or sporadically over relatively large area. Taxa and populations that require special protective measures but are currently data deficient or do not fully meet the rest of the criteria are considered as species of uncertain status. Recovered and recovering species includes those taxa and populations whose number and extent of occurrence began to recover because of natural reasons or conservation measures undertaken so that they approach a condition when they do not require urgent measures for conservation and recovery.

### **Regional Red Data Books**

According to the Federal Law *on Wildlife* (Article 24) (see above), each administrative region of the Russian Federation shall develop and publish its own Red Data Book. Regional Red Data Books are published either as joint volumes devoted to animal, plant and fungi kingdoms, or as individual volumes “Plants and Fungi”, “Animals.»

The majority of regional Red Data Books refer to a particular administrative region of the Russian Federation. The list of species included into the Red Data Book of the administrative region is set by the authorized executive agency of the administrative region of the Russian Federation.

#### **Information for consideration**

The majority of regional Red Data Books are arranged similarly to the *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation* (2001). Articles on particular species are organized according to the following scheme: species name and systematic position, status of rareness and vulnerability, extent of occurrence, number, ecology, limiting factors, undertaken and required protection measures and sources of information. Sometimes maps are provided showing the occurrence of particular species. The majority of regional Red Data Books include both lists of species and annotated articles.

When identifying the rarity and vulnerability of species, the majority of regional Red Data Books refer to IUCN categories. However, the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation uses obsolete categories. The new IUCN classification (Categories, 2002), has not been used yet anywhere.

Regional Red Data Books fall into two categories according to their legal status: official (published with observation of relevant regulations and procedures) and scientific (published without observation of the relevant legal requirements and, therefore not providing legal protection for the listed species).

Some official regional Red Data Books are published with violation of the legislation. For example, the list of species in the Red Data Book may not match the one preliminarily approved by the legislative bodies of the administrative region of the Russian Federation. In some cases, the Rules on the regional Red Data Book could be approved by the regional legislative authorities, while the List of Rare Species could be not.

Red Data Books with scientific status can acquire official status provided they follow the relevant legal procedure, e.g. after official approval of the Rules on the Red Data Book and the List of species nominated to the Red Data Book.

The officially approved List of species in the regional Red Data Book may differ from the officially approved List of candidate species. The list of species to be protected may be updated more frequently than the Red Data Book.

**Table C1.** Effective Red Data Books of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation (after Gorbatovskiy, 2003, with corrections) (information for consideration)

**Russian National FSC Standard**

<b>Region</b>	<b>Year of Publishing</b>	<b>Book Status</b>	<b>Form of publication</b>
<b>Central Federal District</b>			
Belgorod Oblast	2005	official	joint volume
Bryansk Oblast	2004 2004	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
Ivanovo Oblast	planned for 2009 2007	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
Kaluga Oblast	2006	official	joint volume
Kostroma Oblast	planned for 2009	official	joint volume
Kursk Oblast	2001 2001	scientific scientific	volume on animals volume on plants and fungi
Lipetsk Oblast	2005 2006	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
City of Moscow	2001	official	joint volume
Moscow Oblast	2008	official	joint volume
Oryol Oblast	2007	official	joint volume
Ryazan Oblast	2001 2002	official official	volume on animals volume on fungi and plants
Smolensk Oblast	1997	official	joint volume
Tambov Oblast	2000 2002	official official	volume on animals volume on plants, lichens and fungi
Tver Oblast	2002	official	joint volume
Voronezh Oblast	planned for 2009	official	joint volume
Yaroslavl Oblast	2004	official	joint volume
<b>Northwestern Federal District</b>			
Arkhangelsk Oblast	2008	official	joint volume
Komi Republic	1998	official	joint volume
Leningrad Oblast	2000 2002	official official	volume on plants and fungi volume on animals
Murmansk Oblast	2003	official	joint volume
Nenets Autonomous Okrug	2006	official	joint volume
Republic of Karelia	2007	official	joint volume
City of St. Petersburg	2004	official	joint volume
Vologda Oblast	2004 planned for 2009	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
<b>Southern Federal District</b>			
Republic of Adygeya	2000	official	joint volume
Astrakhan Oblast	2004	official	joint volume
Chechen Republic	2007	official	joint volume
Volgograd Oblast	2006 2004	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
Republic of Dagestan	1998	official	joint volume
Republic of Ingushetia	2007	official	joint volume
Kabardino–Balkarian Republic	2000	official	joint volume
Republic of Karachay–Cherkessia	1998	scientific	joint volume
Krasnodar Kray	2007 2007	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
Republic of North Ossetia–Alania	1999	official	joint volume
Rostov Oblast	2004 2004	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
Stavropol Kray	2002 2002	official official	volume on animals volume on plants

**Russian National FSC Standard**

<b>Region</b>	<b>Year of Publishing</b>	<b>Book Status</b>	<b>Form of publication</b>
<b>Volga Federal District</b>			
Chuvash Republic	2001 planned for 2009	official official	volume on plants and fungi volume on animals
Kirov Oblast	2001	official	joint volume
Nizhny Novgorod Oblast	2003 2005	official official	volume on animals volume on vascular plants, lichens and fungi
Orenburg Oblast	1998	official	joint volume
Penza Oblast	2002 2005	official official	volume on plants and fungi volume on animals
Perm Kray	2008	official	joint volume
Republic of Bashkortostan	2001 (v. 1) 2002 (v. 2) 2004	official official official	volume on plants volume on mosses, alga, lichens and fungi volume on animals
Republic of Mari El	1997 2002 2007	official official official	volume on plants volume on animals volume on fungi, lichens and mosses
Republic of Mordovia	2003 2005	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
Republic of Tatarstan	1995	official	joint volume
Samara Oblast	2007 2008	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
Saratov Oblast	2006	official	joint volume
Udmurt Republic	2001 2001	official official	volume on animals volume on plants, lichens and fungi
Ulyanovsk Oblast	2005 2004	official official	volume on plants volume on animals
<b>Ural Federal District</b>			
Chelyabinsk Oblast	2005	official	joint volume
Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug	2003	official	joint volume
Kurgan Oblast	2002	official	joint volume
Sverdlovsk Oblast	2008	official	joint volume
Tyumen Oblast	2004	official	joint volume
Yamalo–Nenets Autonomous Okrug	1997	official	joint volume
<b>Siberian Federal District</b>			
Altay Kray	2006 2006	official official	volume on animals volume on plants
Zabaikalskiy Kray	2000 2002	scientific scientific	volume on animals volume on plants
Irkutsk Oblast	2001 planned for 2010	official official	volume on plants joint volume

### Russian National FSC Standard

Region	Year of Publishing	Book Status	Form of publication
Kemerovo Oblast	2000	official	volume on animals
	2000	official	volume on plants and fungi
Krasnoyarsk Kray	2004	official	volume on animals
	2005	official	volume on plants and fungi
Novosibirsk Oblast	2008	official	joint volume
Republic of Altay	2007	official	volume on animals
	2007	official	volume on plants
Republic of Buryatia	2005	official	volume on animals
	2002	official	volume on plants and fungi
Republic of Khakassia	2002	official	volume on plants and fungi
	2004	official	volume on animals
Tomsk Oblast	2002	official	joint volume
Tuva Republic	1999	official	volume on plants
	2002	official	volume on animals
<b>Far Eastern Federal District</b>			
Amur Oblast	1995	official	volume on plants
Chukotka Autonomous Okrug	2008	official	volume on animals
	2008	official	volume on plants
Jewish Autonomous Oblast	2006	official	volume on plants
	2004	official	volume on animals
Kamchatskiy Kray	2007	scientific	volume on plants
	2006	official	volume on animals
Khabarovsk Kray	2008	official	joint volume
Koryak Autonomous Okrug**	1998	scientific	volume on animals
Magadan Oblast	2008	official	volume on animals
Primorskiy Kray	2005	official	volume on animals
Republic of Sakha (Yakutia)	2003	scientific	volume on animals
	2000	official	volume on plants and fungi
Sakhalin Oblast	2000	official	volume on animals
	2005	official	volume on plants

### Other Legal Regulations on Protection of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Animals, Plants and Fungi

At the national level, protection of rare, threatened and endangered species, besides the listing in the Red Data Book, is regulated by a number of laws on nature protection and use of natural resources.

According to Article 60 of Federal Law *On Environment Protection* “Protection of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and other organisms”:

“1. In order to provide protection and account of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and other organisms, the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation is established as well as Red Data Books of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation. Red-listed plants, animals and other organisms shall be withdrawn from economic use. ... Any activity that leads to reduction in the number of such plants, animals and other organisms and to deterioration of their environment is prohibited.

2. Procedures for protection of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and other organisms and keeping of the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and Red Data Books of its administrative regions ... are set up by the environmental legislation.”

According to Article 24 of the Federal Law *on Fauna* “Protection of rare, threatened and endangered items of fauna”:

Rare, threatened and endangered items of fauna are listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and (or) Red Data Books of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation.

The activities that may lead to death, reduction in number or destruction of habitats of items of fauna enlisted in the Red Data Books are not permitted.

Legal entities and citizens performing any economic activity in the area of occurrence of red-listed animals are responsible for protection and reproduction of these species of fauna according to the legislation of the Russian Federation and its administrative regions ...”.

## Russian National FSC Standard

According to Article 59 of the Forest Code, “Protection of rare, threatened and endangered species of trees, shrubs, lianas and other forest plants”: “In order to provide conservation of rare, threatened and endangered species of trees, shrubs, lianas and other forest plants listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation or red data books of administrative regions of Russia, activity leading to reduction in number of such species and to deterioration of their habitats can be prohibited or certain restrictions to perform such activity can be introduced.”

To meet the requirements of the legislation on protection of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and other organisms, the government of the Russian Federation adopted Decree No. 158 of February 19, 1996 (with changes of April 24, 2003), *On the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation*. In addition, special regulations were worked out. Materials on protection of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants and animals, including the List of species of plants and fungi protected at the federal level can be found in the publication *Red Data Book of Russia: Legal Acts* (2000). The list of species prohibited for harvest in the forests of the Russian Federation according to Decree No. 513 of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation of December 5, 2011 *On Approval of the List of Tree and Shrub Species, whose Timber is Prohibited for Harvest*, see Table C2. This decree does not list tree species protected at the regional level. According to the Timber Harvesting Regulations approved by Order no. 337 of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation of August 01, 2011: “...10. During timber harvesting trees of species listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation, red data books of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation shall be preserved...”.

**Table C2.** Tree and shrub species, whose timber is prohibited for harvest\*

English name	Latin name
<b>Trees</b>	
Amur cork tree	<i>Phellodendron amurense</i> Rupr.
Apple, all species	<i>Malus</i> Mill.
Apricot, all species	<i>Armeniaca</i> Scop.
Big-leaf magnolia	<i>Magnolia hupoleuca</i> Siebold et Zucc. ( <i>Magnolia obovata</i> Thunb.)
Bothrocaryum controversum	<i>Bothrocaryum controversum</i> (Hemsl. et Prain) Pojarkov
Box, all species	<i>Buxus</i> L.
Caucasus wing-nut	<i>Pterocarya pterocarpa</i> (Michx.) Kunth ex Iljinsk.
Chalk pine	<i>Pinus sylvestris</i> L. var. <i>cretacea</i> Kalenicz. ex Kom.
Cherry plum	<i>Prunus divaricata</i> Ledeb.
Cherry, all species	<i>Cerasus</i> Mill.
Chinese flowering ash, or Japanese flowering ash	<i>Fraxinus lanuginose</i> Koidz., <i>Fraxinus sieboldiana</i> Blume
Common walnut	<i>Juglans regia</i> L.
Crimean pine	<i>Pinus pallasiana</i> D. Don.
Daimyo oak	<i>Quercus dentate</i> Thunb.
Date-plum, persimmon	<i>Diospyros lotus</i> L.
European hop-hornbeam	<i>Ostrya carpinifolia</i> Scop.
European yew	<i>Taxus baccata</i> L.
Full-moon maple, or Japanese maple	<i>Acer japonicum</i> Thunb.
Greek juniper	<i>Juniperus excelsa</i> Bieb.
Japanese red pine	<i>Pinus densiflora</i> Siebold et Zucc.
Japanese red pine	<i>Pinus x funebris</i> Kom. ( <i>P. densiflora</i> Siebold et Zucc. x <i>P. sylvestris</i> L.)
Japanese walnut	<i>Juglans ailanthifolia</i> Carr.
Japanese yew	<i>Taxus cuspidate</i> Siebold et Zucc. ex Endl.
Kalopanax, or prickly castor-oil tree	<i>Kalopanax septemlobus</i> (Thunb.) Koidz.
Karelian birch	<i>Betula pendula</i> Roth var. <i>carelica</i> (Merckl.) Hamet-Ahti
Korean mountain ash	<i>Sorbus alnifolia</i> (Siebold. et Zucc.) C. Koch ( <i>Micromeles alnifolia</i> (Siebold. et Zucc.) Koechne)
Korean pine	<i>Pinus koraiensis</i> Siebold et Zuss.
Manchurian fir	<i>Abies holophylla</i> Maxim.
Manchurian walnut	<i>Juglans mandshurica</i> Maxim.
Maximowicz's linden	<i>Tilia maximowicziana</i> Shirasawa
Monarch birch	<i>Betula maximowicziana</i> Regel



## Russian National FSC Standard

English name	Latin name
Mulberry, all species	<i>Morus L.</i>
Olga Bay larch	<i>Larix olgensis A. Henry</i>
Oriental plane	<i>Platanus orientalis L.</i>
Pear, all species	<i>Pyrus L.</i>
Pistachio	<i>Pistacia mutica Fisch. et C.A. Mey</i>
Pityusa pine	<i>Pinus pityusa Stev.</i>
Radde's birch	<i>Betula raddeana Trautv.</i>
Sakhalin cork tree	<i>Phellodendron sachalinense (Fr. Schmidt) Sarg.</i>
Sakhalin fir (Kamchatka variety)	<i>Abies gracilis Kom.</i>
Sakhalin spruce	<i>Picea glehnii (Fr. Schmidt) Mast.</i>
Schmidt's birch	<i>Betula schmidtii Regel</i>
Stinking juniper	<i>Juniperus foetidissima Willd.</i>
Sweet chestnut or European chestnut	<i>Castanea sativa Mill.</i>
Sycamore maple	<i>Acer pseudoplatanus L.</i>
Temple juniper, or needle juniper	<i>Juniperus rigida Siebold et Zucc. subsp. Litoralis Urussov</i>
Turkish hazel	<i>Corylus colurna L.</i>
White fir	<i>Abies mayriana (Miyabe et Kudo) Miyabe et Kudo</i>
Yezo water oak	<i>Quercus crispula Blume</i>
Zelkova, or Caucasian elm	<i>Zelkova carpinifolia (Pall.) C. Koch</i>
<b>Shrubs</b>	
Colchis bladdernut	<i>Staphylea colchica Stev.</i>
European bladdernut	<i>Staphylea pinnata L.</i>
Exochorda serratifolia	<i>Exochorda serratifolia S. Moore</i>
Sugeroku's holly	<i>Ilex sugerokii Maxim.</i>
Tolmachev's honeysuckle	<i>Lonicera tolmatchevii Pojark.</i>
Wright viburnum	<i>Viburnum wrightii Miq.</i>

According to Timber Harvesting Regulations (2011), in harvest area design, habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species and other known key habitats can be designated as non-exploitable areas (NEP), in which no harvesting shall occur. NEPs can be also designated during timber harvest operations if such areas had been overlooked earlier (further details see below). The requirement to preserve rare species and biological diversity is also contained in the *Content and Procedure of Forest Development Plan* (approved by the Order of the Ministry of Agriculture of the Russian Federation of February 8, 2010, No. 32) and *Form and Procedure for Filling Out and Filing of Forest Declaration* (approved by the Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation of April 2, 2007, No. 74).

### Key Habitats Consistent with 6.2 and 6.3

The general approach to conservation of habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species and the overall biological diversity of forest ecosystems consistent with 6.2 and 6.3, i.e. in intensively exploited forests (outside PNA and HCVF where forest use is severely restricted), shall rely on conservation of key forest habitats (KH). The concept prescribes retaining sites with the highest biodiversity including, apart from habitats of rare species, areas of rare ecosystems, individual small landscape elements (sinkholes, boulders, salt licks) and biological elements (individual old trees with spreading crowns, down deadwood and snags) critical for conservation of many native forest species.

Complete field inventory of habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species, as a rule, is not possible due to the considerable labor required and the lack of specialists in certain groups (species) of organisms. Thus, in practice, key habitats are identified. KH are areas where there is a high probability of non-accidental occurrence of rare, threatened, endangered, vulnerable and care-demanding species. Such potential habitats may be identified in field (by the availability of indicator species or other habitat characteristics) or using remote methods (e.g. based on forest inventory materials).

Some KH are small forest patches (from 0.01 hectare to several hectares), the others are individual trees or their remains (snags, stumps), sometimes groups of trees (clumps). Larger habitats are mainly called key habitats, while individual objects (microhabitats) are referred to as key ele-

## Russian National FSC Standard

ments or objects. A sample incomplete classification of KH which should be retained when designing harvest areas in the taiga zone of Russia is given below (Table C3 and C4).

The diversity of natural and historical development, do not always permit to clearly distinguish between a key habitat (critical habitat) and a high conservation value forest on the area basis. In terms of practical application, it is important that KH with the area ranging from several hectares to several hundred hectares are comparable with or significantly greater than an individual cutblock. This could hinder KH identification and conservation when designing the harvest area. Particular large KH should be referred to as HCVF (see Principle 9). Their conservation value is particularly high when the area being certified lacks relatively large HCVF.

**Table C3.** Sample list of key habitats to be identified when designing harvest areas in taiga zone

Type of habitat	Examples
Open habitats within forested areas (may be mapped together with nearby forest edges)	Patches of bogs, meadows, shrublands and glades Bare scree slopes Bare rockfalls Bare sands
Low production areas	Low stand density, low productive, low site index (bonitet), sparse forests and woodlands
Areas nearby water bodies	Beds of seasonal watercourses and ephemeral water bodies Areas alongside water bodies, bogs and springs Forested islands on lakes, rivers and bogs Mineral islands on forest swamps
Areas with specific soil texture and bedrocks	Exposure of bedrocks and ancient superficial deposits (outcrops) and of subsurface deposits Stony areas (rockfalls) Scree slopes
Areas with specific chemical composition of soils	Forests on calcareous soils Karst sinkholes
Areas with specific water regime	Forest swamps in drainless depressions Waterlogged areas Groundwater discharge sites. Areas with flowing water Floodplains of rivers, brooks, seasonal watercourses
Areas in various topographic positions	Areas on steep slopes (e.g. over 20°). Areas in ravines, hollows, cliffs, benches, small hills, buttes, dunes, faults and canyons
Areas with specific flora (species composition, age and ground-cover)	Fragments of noble hardwoods in taiga Fire refugia Inclusions of old-growth, mature and overmature forest in young, middle-aged and maturing stands
Other	Habitats of particular rare species or groups of species Areas abundant in key stand elements Areas characterized by diverse soil pattern Openings created by the death of canopy trees, windthrow gaps Historical and cultural sites (ancient settlements, including fortified ones, burial mounds, abandoned parks, foundations etc.)

**Table C4.** Sample list of key elements to be identified when designing harvest areas in taiga zone

Type of element	Examples
Individual trees (shrubs) or groups of trees (clumps)	Trees or groups of trees whose diameter and/or age are well over the average values for the forest site or species in question Cavity trees Trees or groups of trees with big bird nests Trees with multiple tops Trees with spread crown Trees or groups of trees scarcely occurring in the stand Deciduous trees in coniferous stands, certain deciduous species (mountain ash, willow, bird cherry, linden etc.) Wind-resistant dying trees Tall shrubs (groups of shrubs) Groups of young growth

### Russian National FSC Standard

Stumps	Natural high stumps
Snags or groups of snags	Snags or groups of snags of certain species Snags with certain diameter
Down deadwood	Big-size down deadwood (with certain diameters) Old down deadwood down deadwood of certain species Pieces of down deadwood
Other	Pit and mound microtopography Boulders, groups of boulders

Local lists of characteristics (areas, species lists, ages of trees etc.) are drawn out with involvement of local biologists (zoologists, botanists, compilers of local Red Data Books). The above tables of elements may be used for drawing out the lists. They may be enlarged, if required.

### **Guidance on Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi**

An organization seeking FSC certification consistent with 6.2 shall establish a system of protection of rare, threatened and endangered species and their habitats. For this purpose, they are recommended to approach specialists in protection of rare, threatened and endangered species. The work should have the following outcomes:

- lists of rare, threatened and endangered species for the area as well as a list of likely critical habitats (key habitats) of rare, threatened, endangered, vulnerable to disturbance and care-demanding species that can be threatened by forestry-related activities, containing the description of their typical habitats, threats, and required protection measures on the basis of the *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation* and relevant regional red data books;
- a review of available materials on rare, threatened and endangered species occurring in the area;
- a set of recommendations for identification of such species habitats and their protection measures (some protection measures could be found in the red data books). The Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and relevant regional red data books may be used to justify the need for protection of key habitats, while the latter can be identified using more common and noticeable indicator species;
- primarily for areas designated for harvest, additional surveys for identification of habitats with concentrated occurrence of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants and habitats critical for rare, threatened and endangered species of wildlife as well as other key habitats.

Then forest managers should approach forest surveyors in order:

- to take into account to whatever extent possible available materials on rare, threatened and endangered species in the lesokhozyaystvenny reglament for a particular district level forest management administration unit (lesnichestvo) and forest management plan of a lease area;
- to establish water protection zones alongside all water bodies in compliance with the Water Code requirements;
- to establish OZU and NEP, including those in habitats critical for rare, threatened and endangered species, coast protective forest habitats, forest habitats near the sources of rivers and streams and forest habitats with the presence of relic and endemic plants; and
- to include protection measures for habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species, including criteria for identification of their likely critical habitats, into the forest management plan (lesokhozyaystvenny reglament or proekt osvoeniya lesov).

The environmental impact assessment (criterion 6.1) will allow including a special section on protection of rare, threatened and endangered species into the proekt osvoeniya lesov to facilitate justification of the need for implemented management activities for protection and enforcement agencies in the sphere of forest management. The management regime in the key habitats shall completely exclude or seriously restrict harvesting of timber and prohibit road construction and location of temporary loggers' camps, store areas and other objects.

According to Article 102 of the Forest Code of the Russian Federation "Protective forests and special protection forest habitats":

"3. Special protection forest habitats include:

- 1) habitats of forest along water bodies protecting banks and soil;

- 2) edges of forest adjacent to non-forest areas;
- 3) permanent seed base areas;
- 4) strictly protected (zapovednye) forest areas;
- 5) forest habitats with the presence of relic and endemic plants;
- 6) habitats of rare, threatened and endangered wildlife; and
- 7) other special protection forest habitats.

Legal justifications for leaving key habitats as OZU and NEP also can be found in the Timber Harvesting Regulations. See further *Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting*.

### **Guidance on Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting**

Deadwood at different decomposition stages with tree regeneration groups and snags (high stumps) is the key substratum for a group of rare and vulnerable to disturbance habitat specialists (plants, fungi, lichens and insects) as well as for some bird specialists. In taiga, large diameter deadwood also plays the key role in natural regeneration of spruce. When planning management and during all types of forestry operations it is necessary to keep in mind the necessity to maintain the continuity of the cycle of deadwood in the forest. Therefore, during harvest, large snags and down deadwood shall be retained to the extent possible. Hanging and dying trees and snags greater than 30–40 cm in diameter that create a safety hazard at forestry operations shall be cut down and left as deadwood. If technically feasible (e.g. when timber harvesters are used), dangerous trees should be cut at the height of 4–6 m above the ground, leaving high stumps. Some residual trees left on clearcut areas as key stand elements for ensuring the patchiness of forest environment could be later wind thrown due to canopy thinning and decline of trees, thus increasing the stock of deadwood.

Of special significance as the key habitats are canopy gaps formed by individual downed trees and their groups and associated mound and pit microtopography.

Old-growth cavity trees are used as nests by big birds, bats and mammals. Retention of clumps of old deciduous trees (aspens and birches) provides more effective natural regeneration of conifers. Retained individual trees of noble hardwood species (e.g. oak, ash, elm, maple, linden and alike), Siberian and Korean pines and larch (in European Russia) promote more effective biodiversity conservation not only of woody species, but also plants, fungi and animals dependant on them. Clearcutting all trees in swamps and wet forests leads to continuous paludification of harvest areas and delays regeneration.

In order to ensure conservation of rare, threatened, endangered, vulnerable and care-demanding species during clearcut (especially for harvest areas greater than 10 ha or wider than 100 m or having at least one side bordering a non-forest area), wind resistant trees and key stand elements (trees and their groups) not creating safety hazard at forestry operations should be retained. Thus, up to 10–20% of the pre-harvest growing stock should be retained. Residual trees could be seed trees of target species; some old non-target broadleaf trees; trees with large bird nests, large cavity trees; veteran trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy; tree species rare in this area (it is better to leave them together with groups or clumps of other trees); and large wind resistant dying trees and snags located at the distance from roads, landings etc. as well as such trees left within clumps and groups and deadwood as high stumps.

In areas with high water tables and areas adjacent to wetlands, wind resistant trees should be retained to partially preserve the stand transpiration capacity.

The legality for retention of the key stand elements can be justified by the presence of rare, threatened and endangered species of flora and fauna (even though these species are not so rare, threatened and endangered in a particular area but rather serve as indicators of high conservation value of the habitat).

Some environmentally valuable trees can also be retained as individual trees or within groups and clumps of seed trees as well as other non-exploitable areas (NEP) in consistency with the Timber Harvesting Regulations. See further *Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting*.

### **Sample procedure for identification of key habitats (KH) and key elements (KE) when designing harvest area**

### Russian National FSC Standard

- When designing harvest areas, KH are preliminary identified on the basis of analysis of inventory documents, kvartal group plans and forest stand maps, aerial and satellite imagery.
- An expert or forester who passed a special training inspects harvest areas on-site and identifies KH and KE using methodological guidelines, field indicators of KH and KE, red data books etc. (inspection takes place before the commencement of harvest operations in a snowless period considering the season of harvest area development).
- Identified KH and KE are put on the harvest area map to calculate the non-exploitable area.
- Once identified on site KH with non-zero area are marked (with color band, paint or blazes) on borderline trees.
- KE identified on site are marked (with color band, paint) and accompanied with a text specifying the number of pieces.

#### **Sample procedure for documenting harvest areas, key habitats (KH) and key elements (KE)**

- Primary documents on designed harvest areas are handled.
- A technological map of the harvest area, including information about the identified KH and KE is prepared.
- KH identified on site are mapped as unexploitable areas.
- KE identified on site are listed specifying the type and number of elements.
- Taking into account the identified KH and KE, a harvest area plan is drawn out (showing location of skid trails, loading sites etc.).
- The resource and monetary value of harvest area is assessed taking into account designated unexploitable areas and key elements.
- The technological map is approved by the logging organization's technical director and agreed with the district-level forest authority (lesnichestvo).

#### **Sample procedure for harvest or other silvicultural operations with retention of key habitats (KH) and key elements (KE)**

- Harvest operations shall comply with the requirement on conservation of KH and KE included in the technological map of the harvest area.
- Prior to the commencement of operations, all team members are trained in and made aware of the number and location of designated KH and KE.
- Regular checks of preserved KH and KE are performed during harvest and other silvicultural operations.
- If KH and/or KE not shown on harvest area maps and technological maps are identified during harvest or other silvicultural operations, they should be preserved (if this does not conflict with harvesting techniques and safety requirements). Then, the corresponding changes are made to the documents (harvest area map and technological map of the harvest area) and agreed with the organization's managers and the district-level forestry authorities (lesnichestvo).

#### **Sample list of documenting the list of key habitats, biodiversity elements and measures for protection thereof (to be included into lesokhozyaystvenny reglament of lesnichestvo)<sup>28</sup>**

<b>№</b>	<b>Habitats and objects</b>	<b>Indicators</b>	<b>Protection measures</b>
1	Bog edges	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- the pine-dominated stand;</li> <li>- low site index (bonitet);</li> <li>- high percentage of cull trees;</li> <li>- unforested or sparse forest, low stocked stand;</li> <li>- undrained areas;</li> <li>- availability of snags, mainly of pines;</li> <li>- bog soils;</li> <li>- down deadwood occurs nearby;</li> <li>- abundant moss in groundcover</li> </ul>	<p>All types of harvest are prohibited within the area with the width equal to the average height of the surrounding tree canopy but not less than 25 m from the bog.</p> <p>The site to be preserved shall have natural landscape borders. Such habitats within the harvest area are not subject to harvest and are excluded from the exploitable part of the harvest area.</p> <p>Forest patches on bogs are preserved in full if their area does not exceed 3 ha.</p> <p>The roads for machines shall not cross the key</p>

<sup>28</sup> An excerpt from "Draft Recommendations for Preserving Biological Diversity during Forest Use in Vologda Oblast").

## Russian National FSC Standard

			habitats except winter roads
2	Rare tree species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- presence of larch, elm, linden, Siberian or Korean pines, fir, oak, hazel, black alder and woody juniper;</li> <li>- complex forest type groups prevail;</li> <li>- diverse forest composition;</li> <li>- a multi-storied forest</li> </ul>	<p>Rare species of trees and shrubs are not subject to harvest.</p> <p>Such habitats within the harvest area are not subject to harvest and are excluded from exploitable part thereof.</p> <p>The roads for harvesting machines shall not cross the key habitats</p>

### Guidance on Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values Consistent with Criterion 6.3

**FSC Criterion 6.3** goes that: “Ecological functions and values shall be maintained intact, enhanced, or restored, including:

- a) Forest regeneration and succession,
- b) Genetic species, and ecosystem diversity,
- c) Natural cycles that affect the productivity of the forest ecosystem.”

In terms of implication on planning and forestry operations, this means that harvesting shall be done considering natural landscape borders and mimicking the natural dynamics (e.g. fire or non-fire) wherever possible. Imitation of the natural stand dynamics by harvesting operations a major component of ecologically adaptive forest management. According to this system, the choice of harvesting techniques should to a maximum extent mimic peculiarities of natural dynamics of a particular forest type and consider its composition and structure. For example, when harvesting in even-aged dark coniferous (spruce and fir), mixed coniferous–hardwood and hardwood forests<sup>29</sup>, which develop in the absence of fires (or other stand-replacing disturbances), the preference shall be given to selection cuts. In dark coniferous stands with expressed tree generations, narrow clear-strip cuts, shelterwood (multistage) harvesting and small-size clearcuts can be used. This approach does not recommend to imitate natural catastrophic events, such as catastrophic stand-replacing fires. Therefore, the rationale for the use of clearcuts shall be provided and harvesting shall include biodiversity conservation measures. Thus, in coniferous and mixed coniferous–hardwood stands with fire dynamics, seed trees in numbers sufficient to provide natural regeneration; pole-size trees, key stand elements and key habitats (e.g. small bogs, forest strips along the streams etc., see above) shall be left untouched.

Since the switch to ecologically adaptive forest management requires some time to accumulate the necessary knowledge and experience, the applicant shall develop a special program for implementing such harvesting techniques. Nonetheless, the forest manager shall immediately undertake measures to reduce an adverse impact of the use of large-size clearcuts (over 30 ha) with retention of only non-viable pole-size trees, which leads to a significant delay of coniferous regeneration. The set of such measures includes but is not limited to:

- identification and preservation of critical habitats (key habitats) – sites of high conservation value (see above the section on *Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi*);
- tree retention to preserve the diversity of the forest ecosystem and the patchiness of habitats (see above the section on *Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting*);
- the use of techniques aimed at natural forest regeneration; and
- the use of machinery and practices that minimize the impact on soil and young growth and pollution of forest, soil and water resources.

According to the Timber Harvesting Regulations, during timber harvesting:

- Species listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and red data books of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation, as well as their habitats shall be preserved.
- Viable trees of valuable tree species (oak, beech, ash, Siberian and Korean pines, linden, hornbeam, alder and elm) shall be retained at harvest areas when they grow at the limits of their natural range of occurrence (when the relevant species occupy less than 1% of the area of a forest management unit (lesnichestvo or lesopark)).

<sup>29</sup> Note that hardwoods here mean consisting of noble hardwood species like oak, ash, maple, elm, and linden.

### Russian National FSC Standard

- No harvesting of mature and overmature forest stands, in which Siberian and Korean pines constitute 30% and more of the overall growing stock, shall occur.
- To ensure biodiversity conservation during timber felling, individual valuable trees can be preserved in any forest layer if this does not create problems for further regeneration of forest in the harvest area.

Non-exploitable areas (NEP) may be designated in designing harvest areas. Such areas may include:

- a) non-forest patches (bogs, clearcuts, openings in the forest etc.) irrespective of their size;
- b) designed seed clumps and strips;
- c) patches of young and middle-aged stands dispersed among mature stands;
- d) patches of maturing stands less than 1 ha in size located in mature and overmature stands; and
- e) areas having natural objects of high conservation value.

NEPs may be also designated according to the above criteria during harvesting of timber if such areas had been overlooked earlier. In this case the respective changes shall be made to harvest documents.

According to Article 65 of the *Water Code* “Water protection zones and coastal protective strips”:  
“... 4. The width of the water protection zone of river or stream is established starting from their source to the mouth depending on river length:

- 1) 50 m for rivers less than 10-km long;
- 2) 100 m for rivers from 10 to 50 km long;
- 3) 200 m for rivers over 50 km long.

5. For rivers and streams less than 10 km long from source to mouth, a water protection zone is the same as the coastal protective strip. The radius for the water protection zone around the source is 50 m.

6. The width of the water protection zone of the lake or reservoir, except lakes inside bogs and lake or reservoir with area less than 0.5 sq. km is 50 m.

7. The width of the water protection zone of the Lake Baikal is established by the Federal Law On *Protection of the Lake Baikal*, No. 94-FZ of May 1, 1999.

8. The width of the water protection zone of seaside is 500 m.

9. Water protection zones along main and secondary channels coincide with the land designated for their construction.

11. The width of the coastal protective strip depends on the slope gradient near the water body and is equal to 30 m for backwards and zero slopes, 40 m for slopes under 3 degrees and 50 m for slopes over 3 degrees.

12. For stagnant and non-stagnant lakes and respective streams located inside wetlands the coastal protective strip equals to 50 m.

13. The width of the coastal protective strip of lakes and reservoir having significance for fisheries (spawning grounds, sites of fattening and wintering of fish and other aquatic biological resources) is 200 m irrespective of the slope of adjacent lands.”

### **Guidance on Collection and Analysis of Information Permitting to Assess the Composition of Flora and Fauna and its Changes in Relation with Forest Management and its Purposes (Indicator 8.2.7)**

Indicator 8.2.7 requires collecting and analyzing information which permits to assess changes in the flora and fauna in relation to forest management and its purposes. This indicator does not prescribe collecting information about all flora and fauna species. Its aim is to assess the condition of different habitat types (forest types, plant communities) in terms of meeting the requirements of criteria 6.3, 6.4, 9.3 and 9.4 (i.e. conservation of biodiversity of species and ecosystems (especially rare) and HCVF, as well as taking measures to avoid uncontrolled spread of exotic species). The intensity of monitoring shall correspond to the scale and intensity of management activities. The assessment of condition of common flora and fauna species may be based on the data on changes in area of basic habitat types and their condition (especially rapid habitat reduction due to management activities, e.g. of old-growth forests and rare ecosystems), forest inventory materials and satellite imagery or the status of individual species reflecting a broad range of environmental conditions (e.g. big hoofed animals and carnivores), or species sensitive to changes in the environment (e.g. endemics) and species occurring at the limits of their natural range (e.g. oak, ash, maple, linden and elm in the taiga zone in European Russia). For protected sites where almost no forest management activities occur, general or even qualitative assessments may be sufficient. For protected sites where forest management is intensive, the analysis of status of certain species populations may be required.

**Russian National FSC Standard**  
**Sample procedure for monitoring harvest areas with retained key habitats (Indicator 8.2.8)**

- In order to monitor biodiversity, an observation sheet shall be completed for each harvest area which states the key habitats and key elements present and their condition before and after harvesting. The observation sheet can be supplemented by a copy of harvest area map with the key habitats shown.
- The monitoring is conducted once a year and its time can be combined with forest regeneration operations. It should continue until a harvest area will enter a category of forested area.
- The data obtained are included into the observation sheet.
- Monitoring of key habitats stops after the harvest area enters a category of forested area, of which a special entry is made in the observation sheet.
- The monitoring data are used during further forest management activities in the relevant harvest area.

**References on Red Data Books**

***Russian Federation***

1. 2003 \*Russia\* Red List of Protected Rare and Threatened Animals and Plants. Vol. 1. Vertebrates [2003 \*Rossiya\* Krasny spisok osobo okhranyaemykh redkikh i nakhodyashchikhsya pod ugrozoi ischeznoveniya zhivotnykh i rasteniy. Chast 1. Pozvonochnye]. Ed. V.E. Prisyazhnyuk, VNIIPrirody. Moscow, 2004. 304 p. (In Russ.)
2. 2003 \*Russia\* Red List of Protected Rare and Threatened Animals and Plants. Vol. 2. Spore plants and fungi [2003 \*Rossiya\* Krasny spisok osobo okhranyaemykh redkikh i nakhodyashchikhsya pod ugrozoi ischeznoveniya zhivotnykh i rasteniy. Chast 2. Sporovye rasteniya i griby]. Ed. V.E. Prisyazhnyuk. Moscow: VNIIPrirody, 2004. 384 p. (In Russ.)
3. Baillie J.E.M., Hilton-Taylor P. and Stuart S.N. (eds.). 2004 IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. A Global Species Assessment. IUCN, Gland and Cambridge, 2004. 217 p.
4. Gorbатовskiy V.V. Red Data Books of Administrative Regions of the Russian Federation: A Guidebook [Krasnye knigi subyektov Rossiyskoy Federatsii: Spravochnoe posobie]. Moscow: NIA-Priroda, 2003. 496 p. (In Russ.)
5. Decree of the Government of the Russian Federation of February 19 1996 No. 158 *On Red Data Book of the Russian Federation* (with changes of April 24 2003) [Postanovlenie Pravitelstva Rissiyskoy Federatsii ot 19.02.1996 No. 158 O Krasnoy knige Rossiyskoy Federatsii (s izmeneniyami ot 24.04.2003)]. (In Russ.)
6. Kotiranta H., Uotila P. Sulkava S. and Peltonen S.–L. (eds.). Red Data Book of East Fennoscandia. Helsinki: Ministry of the Environment, Finnish Environment Institute and Botanical Museum, Finnish Museum of Natural History, 1998. 351 p.
7. List of Objects of Flora Excluded from Red Data Book of the Russian Federation [Perechen obyektov rastitelnogo mira, zanesennykh v Krasnuyu knigu Rossiyskoy Federatsii] (Manuscript, 2004). Approved January 19 2004 at the extended bureau of Commission on Rare and Threatened Species of Animals, Plants and Fungi under Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation. (In Russ.)
8. List of Objects of Flora Included in Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (Manuscript, 2004) [Perechen obyektov rastitelnogo mira, zanesennykh v Krasnuyu knigu Rossiyskoy Federatsii]. Approved January 19 2004 at the extended bureau of Commission on Rare and Threatened Species of Animals, Plants and Fungi under the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation. (In Russ.)
9. Red Data Book of RSFSR (Plants) [Krasnaya kniga RSFSR (Rasteniya)]. Moscow: Rosagropromizdat, 1988. 590 p. (In Russ.)
10. Red Data Book of Russia: Legal Acts [Krasnaya kniga Rossii: pravovye akty]. Moscow: Gos. kom. Ross. Federatsii po okhrane okruzh. sredy, 2000. 143 p. (In Russ.)
11. Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (Animals) [Krasnaya kniga Rossiyskoy Federatsii (Zhivotnye)]. Moscow: Minist. prirodn. resursov Ross. Federatsii i Ross. Akad. Nauk, 2001. 864 p. (In Russ.)

***Central Federal District***



12. Red Data Book of Belgorod Oblast: Rare, Threatened and Endangered Plants, Lichens, Fungi and Animals. [*Krasnaya kniga Belgorodskoy oblasti: redkie i ischeznyayushchie rasteniya, lishainiki, griby i shivotnye*]. Belgorod: Upravlenie feder. sluzhby po nadzoru v sfere prirodopol'zovaniya po Belgorodskoy oblasti. BelGU, Ecologich. fond Belgorodsk. oblasti, Belgorod: Belgorodskaya oblastnaya tipografia, 2005. 532 p. (In Russ.)
13. Red Data Book of Bryansk Oblast. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Bryanskoy oblasti. Zhivotnye*]. Bryansk: Chitay-gorod, 2004. 256 p. (In Russ.)
14. Red Data Book (Animals) of Ivanovo Oblast. [*Krasnaya kniga (zhivotnye) Ivanovskoy oblasti*]. Ivanovo, 2007. (In Russ.)
15. Red Data Book of Kaluga Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Kaluzhskoy oblasti*]. Kaluga: Zolotaya al'leya, 2006. 608 p. (In Russ.)
16. Red Data Book of Kursk Oblast. Vol. 1. Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Kurskoy oblasti. Vol. 1. Redkie i ischeznyayushchie vidy zhivotnykh*]. Ed. A.A. Vlasov. Tula: Grif i Ko, 2001. 120 p. (In Russ.)
17. Red Data Book of Kursk Oblast. Vol. 2. Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Kurskoy oblasti. Vol. 2. Redkie i ischeznyayushchie vidy rasteniy i gribov*]. Ed. N.I. Zolotukhin. Tula: Grif i Ko, 2001. 165 p. (In Russ.)
18. Red Data Book of Lipetsk Oblast. Vol. 1. Plants, Fungi, Lichens. [*Krasnaya kniga Lipetskoy oblasti. Rasteniya, griby, lishayniki*]. Eds. V. N. Tikhomirov, K. I. Alexandrova, M. V. Kulikova. Moscow, 2005. 271 p. (In Russ.)
19. Red Data Book of Lipetsk Oblast. Vol. 2. Animals. [*Krasnaya kniga Lipetskoy oblasti. Zhivotnye*]. Eds. V. M. Konstantinov. Lipetsk: Istoki, 2006. 510 p. (In Russ.)
20. Red Data Book of Moscow Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Moskovskoy oblasti*]. Eds. T.A. Varlygin et al. Ministerstvo ekologii i prirodopol'zovaniya Moskovskoy oblasti, Kommissiya po redkim i nakhodyashchimsya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidam zhivotnykh, rasteniy i gribov Moskovskoy oblasti. Moscow: Tovar. nauch. izd. KMK, 2008. 827 p. (In Russ.)
21. Red Data Book of Oryol Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Orlovskoy Oblasti*]. 2007. 264 p. (In Russ.)
22. Red Data Book of Plants of Bryansk Oblast. [*Krasnaya kniga rasteniy Bryanskoy oblasti*]. Bryansk: Chitay-gorod, 2004. 271 p. (In Russ.)
23. Red Data Book of Ryazan Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Ryazanskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh*]. Eds V.P. Ivanova. Ryazan: Uzorochye, 2001. 312 p. (In Russ.)
24. Red Data Book of Ryazan Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Fungi and Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Ryazanskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy gribov i rasteniy*]. Ed. M.V. Kazakova. Ryazan: Uzorochye, 2002. 264 p. (In Russ.)
25. Red Data Book of Smolensk Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals and Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Smolenskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh i rasteniy*]. Ed. N.D. Kruglov. Smolensk: Smolensk. pedagog. inst., 1997. 294 p. (In Russ.)
26. Red Data Book of Tambov Oblast: Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Tambovskoy oblasti: Zhivotnye*]. Eds. G.A. Lada and V.N. Yatsenko. Tambov: Tambovpoligrafizdat, 2005. 352 p. (In Russ.)
27. Red Data Book of Tambov Oblast: Plants, Lichens and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Tambovskoy oblasti; rasteniya, lishainiki, griby*]. Gos. kom.po okhrane okruzhayushchey sredy Tambovskoy oblasti; Eds. G.S. Usoova et al. Tambov: Tambovpoligrafizdat, 2006. 348 p. (In Russ.)
28. Red Data Book of the City of Moscow [*Krasnaya kniga goroda Moskvy*]. Eds. B.L. Samoylov and G.V. Morozov. Moscow: ABF, 2001. 624 p. (In Russ.)
29. Red Data Book of Tver Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Tverskoy oblasti*]. Ed. A.R. Sorokin. Tver: Veche Tveri, ANTEK, 2002. 256 p. (In Russ.)
30. Red Data Book of Yaroslavl Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Yaroslavskoy oblasti*]. Ed. L.V. Voronin. Yaroslavl: Izd. Aleksandra Rutmana, 2004. 384 p. (In Russ.)

#### **Northwestern Federal District**

31. Red Data Book of Arkhangelsk Oblast: Rare and Protected Species of Plants and Animals. [*Krasnaya kniga Arkhangelskoy oblasti. Redkie i okhranyemye vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh*].

- Kom. po ekologii. ogy of Arkhangelsk. Ooblasti, Ed. V.A. Andreev, Arkhangelsk: Pravda Severa, 2008. 351 p. (In Russ.)
32. Red Data Book of Murmansk Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Murmanskoy oblasti*]. Eds. N.A. Konstantinov, A.R. Koryakin, and O.A. Makarova. Murmansk: Murmansk. obl. kn. izd., 2003. 395 p. (In Russ.)
  33. Red Data Book of Nature of Leningrad Oblast. Vol. 2. Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga prirody Leningradskoy oblasti. Vol. 2. Rasteniya i griby*]. Ed. N.N. Tsvelev. St. Petersburg: Mir i semya, 2000. 672 p. (In Russ.)
  34. Red Data Book of Nature of Leningrad Oblast. Vol. 3. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga prirody Leningradskoy oblasti. Vol. 3. Zhivotnye*]. Ed. G.A. Noskov. St. Petersburg: Mir i semya, 2002. 480 p. (In Russ.)
  35. Red Data Book of Nature of the City of Saint Petersburg. [*Krasnaya kniga prirody Sankt-Peterburga*]. Ed. G.A. Noskov. St. Petersburg: Professional, 2004. 416 p. (In Russ.)
  36. Red Data Book of Nenetskiy Okrug [*Krasnaya kniga Nenetskogo okruga*], 2006. (In Russ.)
  37. Red Data Book of the Komi Republic: Rare and Endangered Species of Plants and Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Komi. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh*]. Ed. A.I. Taskaev. Syktyvkar: DIK, 1998. 528 p. (In Russ.)
  38. Red Data Book of the Republic of Karelia [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Kareliai*]. Min. sel'sk., rybn. khoz. i ekologii Resp. Kareliya, Karelskiy nauchn. Tsentr RAN. Petrozavodsk: Karelia, 2007. 368 p. (In Russ.)
  39. Red Data Book of Vologda Oblast. Vol. 2. Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Vologodskoy oblasti. T. 2. Rasteniya i griby*]. Ed. G. Yu. Konechnaya and T. A. Suslova. Vologda: VGPU, 2004. 360 p. (In Russ.)
  40. Red Data Book of Vologda Oblast. Vol. 3. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Vologodskoy oblasti. T. 3. Zhivotnye*]. Vologda, 2008. (In Russ.)

### Southern Federal District

41. Red Data Book of Chechen Republic. Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants and Animals. Vol. 2. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Chechenskoy Respubliki. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh*]. Grozny, 2007. 432 p. (In Russ.)
42. Red Data Book of Ingushetia [*Krasnaya kniga Ingushetii*], 2008.
43. Red Data Book of Karachay–Cherkessia: Rare and Threatened Species of Fauna and Flora [*Krasnaya kniga Karachayevo-Cherkessii. Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy fauny i flory*]. Ed. D.R. Salpagorov. Stavropol: Stavropolsk. kn. izd., 1988. 158 p. (In Russ.)
44. Red Data Book of Krasnodar Krai (Animals) [*Krasnaya kniga Krasnodarskogo kraya (zhivotnye)*]. Ed. A.S. Zamotaylov. Krasnodar: Tsentr razvitiya PTR Krasnodar. kraya, 2007. 280 p. (In Russ.)
45. Red Data Book of Krasnodar Krai: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Krasnodarskogo kraya: Rasteniya i gribyzhivotnykh*]. Ed. V.Ya. Nagalevskiy Admin. Krasnodarskogo kraya. Krasnodar: Krasnodarsk. kn. izd., Dizain Buro No. 1, 2007/1994. 62288 p. (In Russ.)
46. Red Data Book of Rostov Oblast. Vol. 1. Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Animals. [*Krasnaya kniga Rostovskoy oblasti. T. 1. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh*]. Rostov-na-Don: Malyshev, 2004. 81 p. (In Russ.)
47. Red Data Book of Rostov Oblast. Vol. 2. Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants. [*Krasnaya kniga Rostovskoy oblasti. T. 12. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy*]. Rostov-na-Don, 2004. 60 p. (In Russ.)
48. Red Data Book of Stavropol Krai: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals. Vol. 1. Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Stavropolskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh. Vol. 1. Rasteniya*]. Ed. A.L. Chernogorov. Stavropol: Poligrafservice, 2002. 384 p. (In Russ.)
49. Red Data Book of Stavropol Krai: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals. Vol. 2. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Stavropolskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh. Vol. 2. Zhivotnye*]. Ed. A.L. Chernogorov. Stavropol: Poligrafservice, 2002. 216 p. (In Russ.)
50. Red Data Book of the Republic of Adygeya: Rare and Threatened Objects of Flora and Fauna [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Adygei. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya obyekty zhivotnogo i rastitelnogo mira*]. Maykop: Adygeya, 2000. 418 p. (In Russ.)
51. Red Data Book of the Republic of Dagestan: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals and Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Dagestan. Redkie, nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischez-*

*noveniya vidy zhivotnykh i rasteniy*]. Ed. G.M. Abdurakhmanov. Makhachkala: Dagestansk. kn. izd., 1998. 338 p. (In Russ.)

52. Red Data Book of the Republic of Kabardino–Balkaria: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals and Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Kabardino-Balkarskoy respubliki. Redkie, nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh i rasteniy*]. Ed. I.V. Ivanov. Nalchik: El-Fa, 2000. 308 p. (In Russ.)

Red Data Book of the Republic of Northern Ossetia–Alania: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Severnaya Osetiya-Alaniya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh*]. Eds. A.L. Komzha, A.D. Lipkovich, and K.P. Popov. Vladikavkaz: Projekt-Press, 1999. 248 p. (In Russ.)

53. Red Data Book of Astrakhan Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Astrakhanskoy oblasti*]. Ed. Yu.S. Chuykov. Astrakhan: Izd. Nizhnevolzhsk. tsentra ekologich. obrazovan., 2004. (In Russ.)
54. Red Data Book of Kirov Oblast: Animals, Plants, and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Kirovskoy oblasti. Zhivotnye, rasteniya, griby*]. Eds. L.N. Dobrinskiy and N.R. Korytin. Yekaterinburg: Izd. Uralsk. Univ., 2001. 288 p. (In Russ.)
55. Red Data Book of Mordovia Vol. 1. Plants. [*Krasnaya kniga Mordovii. T. 1. Rastenia*]. Saransk, Mordovskoye Knizhnoye izd., 2005. (In Russ.)
56. Red Data Book of Mordovia Vol. 2. Animals. [*Krasnaya kniga Mordovii. T. 2. Zhivotnye*]. Saransk, Mordovskoye Knizhnoye izd.-vo., 2005. (In Russ.)
57. Red Data Book of Nizhny Novgorod Oblast. Vol. 1. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Nizhegorodskoy oblasti. Vol. 1. Zhivotnye*]. Nizhny Novgorod: 2003. 380 p. (In Russ.)
58. Red Data Book of Nizhny Novgorod Oblast. Vol. 2. Vascular Plants, Alga, Lichens, and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Nizhegorodskoy oblasti. Vol. 2. Sosusdistye rasteniyam vodorosli, lishainiki, griby*]. Nizhny Novgorod: 2005. 328 p. (In Russ.)
59. Red Data Book of Orenburg Oblast: Animals and Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Orenburgskoy oblasti. Zhivotnye i rasteniya*]. Ed. A.R. Vasilyeva. Orenburg: Orenburgsk. kn. izd., 1998. 176 p.
60. Red Data Book of Penza Oblast. Vol. 1. Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Penzenskoy oblasti. T. 1. Rasteniya i griby*]. Ed. A.I. Ivanov. Penza: Penzen. pravda, 2002. 160 p. (In Russ.)
61. Red Data Book of Penza Oblast. Vol. 2. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Penzenskoy oblasti. T. 2. Zhivotnye*]. Penza: Penzen. pravda, 2005. 210 p. (In Russ.)
62. Red Data Book of Perm Kray. [*Krasnaya kniga Permskogo kraya*]. Perm: Knizhny mir, 2008. 256 p. (In Russ.)
63. Red Data Book of Samara Oblast. Vol. 1. Rare Species of Plants, Lichens and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Samarskoy oblasti. T. 1. Redkie vidy rasteniy, lishainikov i gribov*]. Eds. G.S. Rozenberg and S.V. Saksonova. Tolyatti: IEVB RAN, 2007. 372 p. (In Russ.)
64. Red Data Book of Samara Oblast. Vol. 2. Rare Species of Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Samarskoy oblasti. T. 2. Redkie vidy zhivotnykh*]. Eds. G.S. Rozenberg and S.V. Saksonova. Tolyatti: IEVB RAN; Kasandra, 2009. (In Russ.)
65. Red Data Book of Saratov Oblast: Fungi, Lichens, Plants and Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Saratovskoy oblasti. Griby, lishainiki, rasteniya i zhivotnye*]. Saratov, 2006. 528 p. (In Russ.)
66. Red Data Book of Tatarstan [*Krasnaya kniga Tatarstana*]. Kazan, 2006. (In Russ.)
67. Red Data Book of Tatarstan [*Krasnaya kniga Tatarstana*]. Kazan, 2006. (In Russ.)
68. Red Data Book of the Chuvash Republic. Vol. 1. Rare and Threatened Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Chuvashia. Vol. 1. Redkie i ischezayushchie rasteniya i griby*]. Ed. L.N. Ivanov. Cheboksary: Chuvashia, 2001. 276 p. (In Russ.)
69. Red Data Book of the Republic of Bashkortostan. Vol. 1. Rare and Threatened Species of Higher Vascular Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Bashkortostan. Vol. 1. Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy vysshikh sosudistyykh rasteniy*]. Ed. E.V. Kucherov. Ufa: Kitap, 2001. 280 p. (In Russ.)
70. Red Data Book of the Republic of Bashkortostan. Vol. 2. Bryophyta, Alga, Lichens, and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Bashkortostan. Vol. 2. Mokhoobraznye, vodorosli, lishainiki i griby*]. Ed. A.I. Solomesh. Ufa: Tabigat, 2002. 104 p. (In Russ.)
71. Red Data Book of the Republic of Bashkortostan. Vol. 3. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Bashkortostan. Vol. 3. Zhivotnye*]. Ed. M.G. Bayanov. Ufa: Bashkortostan, 2004. 180 p. (In Russ.)
72. Red Data Book of the Republic of Mari El: Fungi, Lichens, Mosses [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Mari El: griby, lishainiki, mkhi*]. Minister. sel'skogo khozyaystva i prirodopol'zovaniya Respubliki Mari El, prirodnny zapovednik Bolshaya Kokshaga / G.P. Urbanavichyus. Yoshkar-Ola, 2007. 124 p. (In Russ.)
73. Red Data Book of the Republic of Mari El: Rare and Protection Demanding Plants of the Mari Flora [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Mari El: redkie i trebuyushchie okhrany rasteniya Mariyskoy flory*]. Ed. V.N. Tikhomirov. Yoshkar-Ola: Mariysk. kn. izd., 1997. 128 p. (In Russ.)
74. Red Data Book of the Republic of Mari El: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Mari El: Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy zhivotnykh*]. Ed. Kh. F. Baldaev. Yoshkar-Ola: Izd. Mariysk. poligrafkombinata, 2002. 164 p. (In Russ.)
75. Red Data Book of the Republic of Udmurtia: Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Udmurtia. Zhivotnye*]. Ed. N.E. Zubtsovskiy. Izhevsk: Udmurtia, 2001. 152 p. (In Russ.)

### Russian National FSC Standard

76. Red Data Book of the Republic of Udmurtia: Vascular Plants, Lichens, and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Udmurtia. Sosudistye rasteniya, lishainiki i griby*]. Ed. V.V. Tuganaev. Izhevsk: Udmurtsk. Univ., 2001. 290 p. (In Russ.)
77. Red Data Book of Ulyanovsk Oblast (fungi, animals). [*Krasnaya kniga Ulyanovskoy oblasti (griby, zhivotnye)*]. Ulyanovsk: UIGU, 2004. 288 p. (In Russ.)
78. Red Data Book of Ulyanovsk Oblast (plants). [*Krasnaya kniga Ulyanovskoy oblasti (rastenia)*]. Ulyanovsk: UIGU, 2005. 220 p. (In Russ.)
79. Red Data Book of Volgograd Oblast. Vol. 1: Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Volgogradskoy Oblasti. T.1. Zhivotnye*]. Admin. of Volgogradskoy Oblast., Regional. Center for Research and Conservation of po izuch. i sokhran. bioraznoobraziya Biodiversity, CKom.prirodnkhmittee for Natural Resources and okhrany okruzhayushchey sredy and Environmental Protection of Admin. of Volgogradskoy Oblasti: Volgograd, 2004. 172 p. (In Russ.)
80. Red Data Book of Volgograd Oblast. Vol. 2: Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Volgogradskoy Oblasti. T.2. Rastenia i griby*]. Volgograd, 2006. 216 p. (In Russ.)

### Ural Federal District

81. Red Data Book of Chelyabinsk Oblast: Animals, Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Chelyabinskoy oblasti: zhivotnye, rasteniya, griby*]. Minister. po radiatsionn. i ekologich. bezopasnosti Chelyabinsk. obl. Ed. N.S. Korytin. Institut Ekologii Rasteniy i Zhivotnykh UrO RAN. Yekaterinburg: Uralsk. univ., 2005. 450 p. (In Russ.)
82. Red Data Book of Kurgan Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Kurganskoy oblasti*]. Eds. V.P. Starikov and N.I. Naumenko. Kurgan: Zauralye, 2002. 424 p. (In Russ.)
83. Red Data Book of Sverdlovsk Oblast: Animals, Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Sverdlovskoy oblasti: Zhivotnye, rastenia, griby*]. Ed. N. S. Korytin, Ministerstvo prirodnkh resursov Sverdlovskoy oblasti, Institut Ekologii Rasteniy i Zhivotnykh UrO RAN. Yekaterinburg: Basko, 2008. 256 p. (In Russ.)
84. Red Data Book of Tyumen Oblast. Animals, Plants and Fungi. [*Krasnaya kniga Permskoy oblasti: Zhivotnye, rastenia, griby*]. Yekaterinburg: Izd. Ural. Univ., 2004. 496 p. (In Russ.)
85. Red Data Book of Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug: Animals, Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Khanty-Mansiyskogo avtonomnogo okruga: zhivotnye, rasteniya, griby*]. Ed. A.M. Vasin. Yekaterinburg: Pakrus, 2003. 376 p. (In Russ.)
86. Red Data Book of Yamalo–Nenets Autonomous Okrug: Animals, Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Yamalo-Nenetskogo avtonomnogo okruga: zhivotnye, rasteniya i griby*]. Ed. L.N. Dobrinskiy. Yekaterinburg: Izd. Uralsk. Univ., 1997. 240 p. (In Russ.)

### Siberian Federal District

87. Red Data Book of Altay Kray. Vol. 1.: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Altayskogo kraya. T. 1. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh rasteniy*]. Ed. N.L. Irisov. Barnaul: Izd. Altaysk. Gos. Univ., 2006/1998. 262/38 p. (In Russ.)
88. Red Data Book of Altay Kray. Vol. 2. Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Altayskogo kraya. T. 2. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh*]. Admin. Altayskogo kraya. Barnaul, 2006. 211 p. (In Russ.)
89. Red Data Book of Altay Republic (Animals) [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Altay (zhivotnye)*]. Gorno-Altaysk: RIO Gorno-Altaysk. univ., 2007. (In Russ.)
90. Red Data Book of Altay Republic (Animals) [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Altay (zhivotnye)*]. Gorno-Altaysk: RIO Gorno-Altaysk. univ., 2007. (In Russ.)
91. Red Data Book of Altay Republic (Plants) [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Altay (rastenia)*]. Ed. I.M. Krasnoborov. Gorno-Altaysk, 2007. 271 p. (In Russ.)
92. Red Data Book of Altay Republic (Plants) [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Altay (rastenia)*]. Ed. I.M. Krasnoborov. Gorno-Altaysk, 2007. 271 p. (In Russ.)
93. Red Data Book of Buryat Republic: Rare and Threatened Animal Species [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Buryatii. Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy zhivotnykh*]. Ed. T.G. Baykov. Ulan-ude: In- flornpolis, 2005. 328 p. (In Russ.)

94. Red Data Book of Chita Oblast and Agin–Buryat Autonomous Okrug (Animals) [*Krasnaya kniga Chitinskoy oblasti i Aginskogo Buryatskogo avtonomnogo okruga (zhivotnye)*]. Eds. A.M. Vozmilov *et al.* Chita: Poisk, 2000. 216 p. (In Russ.)
95. Red Data Book of Chita Oblast and Agin–Buryat Autonomous Okrug (Plants) [*Krasnaya kniga Chitinskoy oblasti i Aginskogo Buryatskogo avtonomnogo okruga (rasteniya)*]. Eds. A.P. Ostrovskiy *et al.* Chita: Stil, 2002. 280 p. (In Russ.)
96. Red Data Book of Irkutsk Oblast. Vascular Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Irkutskoy oblasti. Sosudistye rasteniya*]. Ed. A.M. Zarubina. Irkutsk: Oblmashinform, 2001. 200 p. (In Russ.)
97. Red Data Book of Kemerovo Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Kemerovskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh*]. Eds. T.N. Gagina and N.V. Skalon. Kemerovo: Kemerovsk. kn. izd, 2000. 280 p. (In Russ.)
98. Red Data Book of Kemerovo Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Kemerovskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i gribov*]. Eds. I.M. Krasnoborov. Kemerovo: Kemerovsk. kn. izd, 2000. 248 p. (In Russ.)
99. Red Data Book of Krasnoyarsk Kray: Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Krasnoyarskogo kraya: Rasteniya i griby*]. Krasnoyarsk: Polikom, 2005. 368 p. (In Russ.)
100. Red Data Book of Krasnoyarsk Kray: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Krasnoyarskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh*]. Krasnoyarsk: Izd. gos. univ., 2004. 246 p. (In Russ.)
101. Red Data Book of Novosibirsk Oblast: Animals, Plants and Fungi. [*Krasnaya kniga Novosibirskoy oblasti: Zhivotnye, rasteniya i griby*]. Depart. prirodnkh resursov i okhrany okruzhayushchey sredy Novosibirskoy oblasti. Novosibirsk: Arta, 2008. 316 p. (In Russ.)
102. Red Data Book of Omsk Oblast. [*Krasnaya kniga Omskoy oblasti*]. Eds. G.N. Sidorov, V.N. Rusakov. Omsk: Izd. Om. GPU, 2005. 459 p. (In Russ.)
103. Red Data Book of the Buryat Republic: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Buryatii. Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy rasteniy i gribov*]. Ed. T.G. Boykov. Novosibirsk: Nauka, 2002. 340 p. (In Russ.)
104. Red Data Book of the Republic of Khakassia: Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Khakassia: rasteniya i griby*]. Ed. I.M. Krasnoborov. Novosibirsk: Nauka, 2002. 263 p. (In Russ.)
105. Red Data Book of the Republic of Khakassia: Rare and Threatened Animal Species [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Khakassia: Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy zhivotnykh*]. Eds. V.V. Anyushin, I.I. Vishnevetskiy, A.P. Savchenko *et al.* Novosibirsk: Nauka, 2004. 320 p. (In Russ.)
106. Red Data Book of the Tuva Republic: Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Tyva: zhivotnye*]. Eds N.I. Putintsev, L.K. Arakchaa, V.I. Zabelin, and V.V.Zaika. Novosibirsk: Izd. Sib. Otdel. Rossiysk. Akad. Nauk, 2002. 168 p. (In Russ.)
107. Red Data Book of the Tuva Republic: Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Tyva: rasteniya*]. Ed. I.M. Krasnoborov. Novosibirsk: Izd. Sib. Otdel. Rossiysk. Akad. Nauk, 1999. 150 p. (In Russ.)
108. Red Data Book of Tomsk Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Tomskoy oblasti*]. Ed. A.R. Revushkin. Tomsk: Izd. Tomsk. Univ., 2002. 402 p. (In Russ.)
109. Red Data Book of Tyumen Oblast. Animals, Plants and Fungi. [*Krasnaya kniga Tyumenskoy oblasti/ Zhivotnye, rastenia, griby*]. Yekaterinburg: Izd. Uralsk. univ., 2004. 396 p. (In Russ.)

110. Red Data Book of Jewish Autonomous Oblast. Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Evreyskoy avtonomnoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i gribov*]. DVO RAN Inst. kompleksnogo analiza regional'n. problem, Eds. T.A. Rubtsova, S.D. Shlotgauer. Novosibirsk: ARTA: 2006. 247 p. (In Russ.)
111. Red Data Book of Chukotka Autonomous Okrug. Vol. 1. Animals. [*Krasnaya kniga Chukotskogo avtonomnogo okruga. T. 1. Zhivotnye*]. Saint Petersburg: Dikiy Sever, 2008. 235 p. (In Russ.)
112. Red Data Book of Chukotka Autonomous Okrug. Vol. 2. Rare and Threatened Plant Species (Angiosperms, Pteridophytes, Lycopods, Bryophytes, Lichens, Fungi). [*Krasnaya kniga Chukotskogo avtonomnogo okruga. T.2. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy (pokrytosemennye, paprotnikovidnye, plaunovidnye, mokhoobrasnye, lishainiki, griby)*]. Depart. promyshl. i sel'skokhoz. politiki Chukotskogo Avtonomnogo Okruga, Inst. biol. problem Severa DVO RAN. 2008. 219 p. (In Russ.)
113. Red Data Book of Jewish Autonomous Oblast. Rare and Threatened Animal Species of [*Krasnaya kniga Evreyskoy avtonomnoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh*]. Khabarovsk: RIOTIP: 2004. 144 p. (In Russ.)
114. Red Data Book of Kamchatka. Vol. 1. Animals. [*Krasnaya kniga Kamchatki. T. 1. Zhivotnye*]. Petropavlovsk-Kamchatskiy: Kamchatskiy Pechatny Dvor, 2006. 272 p. (In Russ.)
115. Red Data Book of Kamchatka Vol. 2. Plants, Fungi and Thermophilic Organisms. [*Krasnaya kniga Kamchatki. T. 2. Rastenia, griby, termofilnye organismy*]. Petropavlovsk-Kamchatskiy: Kamchatskiy Pechatny Dvor, 2007. 340 p. (In Russ.)
116. Red Data Book of Magadan Oblast. Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Magadanskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh*]. Saint Petersburg: Dikiy Sever, 2008. (In Russ.)
117. Red Data Book of Khabarovsk Krai: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Khabarovskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh*]. Khabarovsk: Izd. IVEP, 2008. 464 p. (In Russ.)
118. Red Data Book of Primorskiy Krai. Rare and Threatened Animal Species [*Krasnaya kniga Primorskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh*]. DVO RAN. Biol.-pochv. inst. Eds. V.A. Kostenko et al. Vladivostok, Apelsin, 2005. 408 p. (In Russ.)
119. Red Data Book of Primorskiy Krai. Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Primorskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i gribov*]. Vladivostok, 2008. 688 p. (In Russ.)
120. Red Data Book of the Republic of Sakha (Yakutia). Vol. 1: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Sakha (Yakutii). Vol. 1. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i gribov*]. Ed. A.P. Isaev. Yakutsk: Sakhapoligraphizdat, 2000. 256 p. (In Russ.)
121. Red Data Book of the Republic of Sakha (Yakutia). Vol. 2: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals (Insects, Fish, Amphibians, Reptiles, Birds and Mammals) [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Sakha (Yakutii). T. 2. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh (nasekomye, ryby, zemnovodnye, presmykayushchiesya, ptitsy, mlekopitayushchie)*]. Minister. okhrany prirody RS (Ya), Depart. biol. resursov, Eds. V.G. Alekseev et al. Yakutsk: Sakhapoligraphizdat, 2003. (In Russ.)
122. Red Data Book of Sakhalin Oblast. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Sakhalinskoy oblasti. Zhivotnye*]. Eds. G.A. Voronov, O.I. Panteleeva et al. Yuzhno-Sakhalinsk: Sakhalinsk. kn. izd., 2000. 190 p. (In Russ.)
123. Red Data Book of Sakhalin Oblast. Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Sakhalinskoy oblasti. Rastenia*]. Kom. prirodnikh resursov i okhrany okruzhayushchey sredy Sakhalinskoy oblasti, DVO RAN, Sakhalinskiy botanicheskiy sad, Biol.-pochv. inst., Yuzhno-Sakhalinsk, 2005. 347 p. (In Russ.)
124. Red Data Book of Yakut ASSR: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Yakutskoy ASSR. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh*]. Ed. N.G. Solomonov. Novosibirsk: Nauka, 1987. 100 p. (In Russ.)
125. Rare and Threatened Plants of Amur Oblast [*Redkie i ischezayushchie rasteniya Amurskoy oblasti*]. Eds. V.M. Kharchenko, G.F. Darman and I.I. Shapoval. Blagoveshchensk: Amursk. Botan. sad, 1995. 460 p. (In Russ.)

**Russian National FSC Standard**  
**Annex D. Protected Nature Areas<sup>30</sup>**

FSC **Criteria 7.1** and **5.6** require from the forest managers to know the borders of protected nature areas (PNA), as well as to take into account the relevant restrictions on forest management applicable to them when planning felling operations.

Thus, **indicator 7.1.13** demands: “The forest management plan describes how the findings of the environmental impact assessment at the landscape level are associated with the presence of HCVF, representative samples of existing ecosystems, habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi and other key habitats (see **6.2** and **6.4**) and sites of special significance for local people with regard to recreation, cultural and religious life, hunting, fishing and the use of other non-timber forest products are incorporated”, while **indicator 7.1.17**: “The forest management plan contains maps showing relative position and correspondence between different protected forest sites (including protected areas, representative samples of existing ecosystems) and HCVF (see also **6.4** and **9.1**)”.

**Indicator 5.6.2** demands: “The total planned annual harvest level shall be reduced if the applicable AAC for the leased area includes timber:

- 5.6.2a. Harvesting of which is prohibited or restricted by the regime of protected sites;
- 5.6.2b. Harvesting of which is permitted but would not be possible due to their economic inaccessibility or insufficient growing stock (economically inaccessible forests).”

PNA are now considered as a subcategory of high conservation value forests **HCV 1.1** (see *Annex E*). PNA sometimes may occur in a lesnichestvo (district level forest management administration unit) or even within the lease areas being certified. It should be mentioned that as a rule PNA are not subject to lease for forest use (especially for commercial harvesting), nevertheless it is not directly prohibited by law. Some forests that seek FSC certification could contain candidate protected areas. Furthermore, some lands within the applicant’s area can be reserved for establishment of a PNA.

Official information about candidate protected areas, especially at the regional level, is sometimes hard to find, because of the complicated and multi-stage procedure of their establishment.

Table D1 lists candidate zapovedniks (strict nature reserves) and national parks in forest and forest-steppe zones of the Russian Federation to be created in 2001–2010 according to the Decree of the government of the Russian Federation of May 23, 2001, No. 725-r.

The Table D2 lists decisions by regional administrations available in the reference legal systems to establish new PNAs and to reserve lands for them. Information on existing and candidate PNAs shall be requested from lesnichestvo staff, authorities and forestry agencies of administrative regions of the Russian Federation.

**Table D1.** List of candidate zapovedniks (strict nature reserves) and national parks in forest and forest-steppe zones of the Russian Federation to be created in 2001–2010 (as amended)

Location	Name	Area, thsd. ha	Brief description
<b>Zapovedniks (Strict Scientific Nature Reserves)</b>			
Leningrad Oblast	Ingermanlandskiy	14.2	Islands and waters in the eastern Gulf of Finland, the Baltic Sea
Novosibirsk Oblast	Barabinskiy	15	Forest-steppe nature complexes of the Barabinskaya lowland near the Chany Lake
Orenburg Oblast	Shaytan-Tau	9.5	Forest-steppe nature complexes and Shaytan-Tau Range
Stavropol Kray	Stavropolskiy lesostepnoy	19	Natural steppe and forest complexes in ravines, outskirts of the Stavropol Uplands and Strizhament and Bryk mountains
Tomsk Oblast	Yuzhnotaеzhny pikhtovy	83	Southern taiga nature complexes of the Western Siberian plain
<b>National Parks</b>			
Arkhangelsk Oblast	Onezhskoe pomorye	300	Virgin northern taiga complexes on the Onega peninsula
Bryansk Oblast	Pridesnyanskiy	104	Desna floodplain coniferous-broadleaf forests and landscapes
Chuvash Republic	Zavolzhye	32	Nature complexes on the Volga’s left bank, picturesque forest lakes,

<sup>30</sup> This annex is given for information only and contains examples of sources of information. The guidance regarding PNA is intended to help the forest manager and the certification body to understand how the indicator should be applied in practice. This does not mean that guidance contains a conclusive list of information sources and application guidance statements cover all variety of cases.



**Russian National FSC Standard**

Location	Name	Area, thsd. ha	Brief description
			medicinal sapropelic mud and sources of drinking medicinal waters
Republic of Karelia	Ladozhskiy shkhery	120	A skerry landscape on the north-western coast of the Lake Ladoga
Khabarovsk Krai	Shantar'skie ostrova	512	Island and marine ecosystems of the Shantar archipelago and waters of the Sea of Okhotsk
Ulyanovsk Oblast	Sengileyskiye gory	50	Picturesque forests on the shores of the Kuibyshev reservoir

**Table D2.** Available regional legal decisions on candidate protected areas and on reservation of lands for them

Region	Name of Document
<b>Central Federal District</b>	
Tver Oblast	Decree of the administration of Tver Oblast of March 21, 2003, No. 71-pa <i>To reserve lands in the vicinity of Tver State University's Botanical Garden</i>
Voronezh Oblast	Decree of the administration of Voronezh Oblast of October 25, 2000, No. 1001 <i>To develop the network of protected nature areas</i>
Yaroslavl Oblast	Decree of the governor of Yaroslavl Oblast of June 1, 1998, No. 358 <i>To develop a system of protected nature areas of Yaroslavl Oblast</i>
<b>Northwestern Federal District</b>	
Republic of Karelia	Decree of the head of the government of the Republic of Karelia of July 6, 2007, No. 102-II <i>Land-Use Plan of the Republic of Karelia</i> . The documents prescribes establishment of 60 new PNA in different districts of Karelia
Murmansk Oblast	Decree of the government of Murmansk Oblast of February 27, 2003, No. 53-pp/4 <i>To reserve lands for creating the state complex nature zakaznik [reserve] Laplandskiy les</i>
<b>Volga Federal District</b>	
Chuvash Republic	Decree of the government of Chuvash Republic of June 22, 1993, No. 180 <i>To develop the protected nature areas network in the Chuvash Republic</i>
Orenburg Oblast	Law of Orenburg Oblast of November 9, 2004, No. 1534/260-iii-OZ <i>To reserve lands at the territory of Orenburg Oblast</i>
Perm Oblast	Decree of the governor of Perm Oblast of August 1, 2001, No. 188 <i>To reserve lands for establishing protected nature areas in 2001–2015</i>
Republic of Bashkortostan	Decree of the government of the Republic of Bashkortostan of October 1, 2002, No. 293 <i>To reserve lands for establishing protected nature areas in the Republic of Bashkortostan</i>
	Decree of the government of the Republic of Bashkortostan of January 29, 1997, No. 74-r. Guidance: <i>Target program for establishing and developing the protected nature areas network in the Republic of Bashkortostan for 1997–2000</i>
Republic of Tatarstan	Decree of the president of the Republic of Tatarstan of January 22, 2004, No. UP-26 <i>To reserve lands in the Republic of Tatarstan</i>
	Decree of the government of the Republic of Tatarstan of October 13, 2000, No. 730 <i>To reserve lands for establishing protected nature areas</i>
	Decree of the government of the Republic of Tatarstan of January 18, 1996., No. 22 <i>To preserve and develop the protected nature areas network in the Republic of Tatarstan</i>
<b>Ural Federal District</b>	
Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug	Decree of the government of Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug of September 20, 2002, No. 519-p <i>To approve the land planning project for the Samarovskiy Chugas nature park and to reserve lands (sites) for its establishment</i>
Kurgan Oblast	Decree of the administration (government) of Kurgan Oblast of June 6, 2000, No. 381 <i>On reserving lands where the lakes Gorkoe, Zemkovo, Sukhanovo and Mironovskoe of Kurtamyshskiy district are located to subsequently award them with a status of medicinal and healing territories</i>
Tyumen Oblast	Decree of the governor of Tyumen Oblast of October 21, 2002, No. 383 <i>On measures to identify and reserve lands for regional level protected nature areas</i> . Guidance: Sketch map of developing a system of protected nature areas of regional significance in Tyumen Oblast over the period of 2002–2005
	Decree of the administration of Tyumen Oblast of February 20, 2004, No. 50 <i>On amendments to the development and location scheme of the system of regional level protected nature areas in Tyumen Oblast</i>
<b>Siberian Federal District</b>	
Altay Republic	Decree of the administration of Altay Krai of April 6, 2001, No. 251 <i>On development and location scheme of protected nature areas in Altay Krai</i>

### Russian National FSC Standard

Region	Name of Document
	Decree of the government of Altay Republic of August 18, 2003, No. 225 <i>On the location and development scheme of protected nature areas in Altay Republic for the period up to the year 2010</i>
Krasnoyarsk Kray	Decree of the administration of Krasnoyarsk Kray of February 12, 1998, No. 86-p <i>On the development and location scheme of protected nature areas in Krasnoyarsk Kray for the period up to the year 2005</i>
	Decree of the administration council of Krasnoyarsk Kray of July 11, 2002, No. 252-p <i>To reserve lands for establishment of the regional level nature park Kanskoe Belogorye</i>
	Decree of the administration council of Krasnoyarsk Kray of November 3, 2004, No. 220-p <i>To reserve lands for establishment of the regional level biological zakaznik [reserve] Saratovskoye boloto</i>
	Decree of the administration council of Krasnoyarsk Kray of February 28, 2003, No. 54-p <i>To reserve lands for establishment of the regional level protected nature area Symyskiy Nature Park</i>
	Decree of the administration council of Krasnoyarsk Kray of May 20, 2002, No. 158-p <i>To reserve lands for establishment of regional level natural zakazniks [reserves].</i> Guidance: <i>Reserving lands for establishment of protected nature areas of regional significance Gagul'skaya kotlovina, Tokhtay and Kantegirskiy</i>
	Decree of the administration of Krasnoyarsk Kray of June 21, 2000, No. 467-p <i>To reserve lands for establishment of zakazniks [nature reserves].</i> Guidance: <i>Reserving lands for establishment of regional level protected nature areas Chadobetskiy, Kezhemskoye mnogoostrovye and Deshembinskiy</i>
Novosibirsk Oblast	Decision of Novosibirsk Regional Council of Deputies of December 18, 1996, <i>On prospective scheme of development and location of the protected nature areas network in Novosibirsk Oblast</i>
Omsk Oblast	Law of Omsk Oblast of November 9, 2004, No. 563-OZ <i>On the regional target program Development of protected nature areas to protect game animals in Omsk Oblast up to the year 2010</i>
<b>Far Eastern Federal District</b>	
Koryak Autonomous Okrug	Decree of the administration of Koryak Autonomous Okrug of March 30, 2004, No. 95 <i>To reserve forest lands for a protected nature area in Koryak Autonomous Okrug.</i> Guidance: <i>Reserving lands for establishing the forest zakaznik [reserve] of district significance Severno-Ayankinskiy listvenichno-redkolesny</i>
Sakhalin Oblast	Law of Sakhalin Oblast of October 2 2000 No. 214 (edited on June 23, 2003, No. 414 and December 31 2003 No. 462) <i>On development of protected nature areas in Sakhalin Oblast</i>

The organization seeking for FSC certification, which has PNA and/or lands reserved for their establishment within the area of its operations, should take into account the following guidance when making decisions regarding their forest management regime:

1. In legally established federal, regional and local PNA, all logging operations, building of forest roads and other communications, placement of timber landings, oils and lubricants, forest villages and temporary loggers camps shall not take place, if prescribed by management restrictions of the relevant PNA.
2. In the rest of the PNA, lands reserved for their establishment, as well as in areas included into federal and regional lists (schemes, programs) of the development of PNA approved by the relevant federal and regional authorities (candidate PNA), harvesting of timber can be done only using methods that ensure preservation of the most valuable nature objects and their high conservation values. The same refers to planning and building of forest roads and other communications, as well as placement of any elements of infrastructure.
3. For areas for which there are official and justified proposals on establishing PNA prepared by scientific, non-governmental and state environmental organizations (proposed PNA), logging and road building shall be carried out only after special field surveys involving organizations, which developed the such PNA proposals. These surveys shall specify conservation values of the forest, identify the permissibility of logging operations in it and help to negotiate with stakeholders the plans of forest management and infrastructure development in these forests.

Some areas within the existing and candidate/proposed PNA may have conservation attributes meeting the criteria of high conservation value forests (**FSC Principle 9**). Such areas may be also treated as representative samples of existing ecosystems (**Criterion 6.4**). Thus, **Criterion 6.4** requires: "Representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape shall be protected in their natural state and recorded on maps, appropriate to the scale and intensity of operations and the uniqueness of the affected resources" (see further *Annex E*).

Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests (HCVF)<sup>31</sup>

## HCVF Classification

**Principle 9** of *FSC Principles and Criteria for Responsible Forest Stewardship* “Maintenance of high conservation value forests” was formulated by FSC in its current form in 1999 after the revision of the standards. The implementation of this principle requires from forest managers that “Management activities in high conservation value forests shall maintain or enhance the attributes which define such forests. Decisions regarding high conservation value forests shall always be considered in the context of a precautionary approach”.

FSC defines HCVF as forests possessing one or more of the following attributes:

- a) forest areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant:
  - concentrations of biodiversity values (e.g. endemism, endangered species, refugia) (**Category HCV 1**); and/or
  - large landscape level forests, contained within, or containing the management unit, where viable populations of most if not all naturally occurring species exist in natural patterns of distribution and abundance (**HCV 2**);
- b) forest areas that are in or contain rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems (**HCV 3**);
- c) forest areas that provide basic services of nature in critical situations (e.g. watershed protection, erosion control) (**HCV 4**);
- d) forest areas fundamental to meeting basic needs of local communities (e.g. subsistence, health) (**HCV 5**) and/or critical to local communities’ traditional cultural identity (areas of cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance identified in cooperation with such local communities) (**HCV 6**).

**Information for consideration**

Currently, the following HCVF classification is typically used (Jennings *et al*, 2005):

**HCV 1.** Areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values (e.g. endemism, endangered species, refugia):

**HCV 1.1.** Protected nature areas.

**HCV 1.2.** Threatened and endangered species.

**HCV 1.3.** Endemic species.

**HCV 1.4.** Critical temporal use.

**HCV 2.** Globally, regionally or nationally significant large landscape level areas where viable populations of most if not all naturally occurring species exist in natural patterns of distribution and abundance (*no further subdivision*).

**HCV 3.** Areas that are in or contain rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems (*no further subdivision*).

**HCV 4.** Forest areas performing special protective functions:

**HCV 4.1.** Forest critical to water catchments.

**HCV 4.2.** Forest critical to erosion control.

**HCV 4.3.** Forest providing barriers to destructive fires.

**HCV 5.** Areas fundamental to meeting basic needs of local communities (e.g. subsistence, health) (*no further subdivision*).

**HCV 6.** Areas critical to local communities’ traditional cultural identity (areas of cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance identified in cooperation with such local communities) (*no further subdivision*).

This classification is offered in the new draft version of FSC Principles and Criteria

**Management of HCVF**

<sup>31</sup> Section *References on HCVF* of this annex is given for information only and contains sample sources of information. Section *National Interpretation of HCVF* contains requirements referring to the national interpretation of HCVF. The remaining sections are guidance intended to help the forest manager and the certification body to understand how the indicator should be applied in practice. This does not mean that guidance contains a conclusive list of information sources and application guidance covers all variety of cases. Lists or procedures beginning with the word “sample” and texts placed under the title “Information for consideration” are not strictly compulsory and are given by way of example.

We understand management of HCVF as the implementation of such a management regime (forestry and other activities) in HCVF that permits to maintain and even enhance the respective high conservation value. The management regime is a set of management restrictions of and/or requirements to forest use, forest management and other operations.

Management of HCVF is covered in **Criterion 9.3**: “The management plan shall include and implement specific measures that ensure the maintenance and/or enhancement of the applicable conservation attributes consistent with the precautionary approach. These measures shall be specifically included in the publicly available management plan summary.”

This means that to ensure conservation of the identified HCVF, forest managers shall develop and implement a management regime, which is adapted to local conditions, available resources and existing knowledge.

#### Information for consideration

##### *Determining management regimes in HCVF*

A management regime for HCVF shall take into account that any activity in HCVF shall:

- always be based on the precautionary approach to minimize the risk that any irreversible damage is done to these critical values;
- always be within a framework of adaptive management, i.e. by planning, implementation, monitoring of effects and where necessary revising the forest management plans on the basis of the analysis of the results of monitoring (Jennings *et al*, 2005).

The main options for management (according to Jennings *et al*, 2005) are:

- “**Protection** of the area, through prohibition of all forest management activities. If required, control of activities that may degrade the HCV (e.g. hunting, fishing) is provided. Where doubt exists as to whether any of the other management options are able to maintain or enhance the identified HCVs, then, consistent with the precautionary approach, protection measures will be the preferred option.
- **Modifications or constraints on operations, or specific operational prescriptions/systems**. These may include seasonal restrictions of cuts, prohibition of certain types of cuts, prohibition of harvesting certain species, retaining certain habitats, special rotation, restricted intensity of cuts etc. the restrictions shall consider all potential effects, both direct (e.g. harvest operations or use of chemicals) and indirect (e.g. increased hunting as a result of better access along newly-built forest roads). Any threats to HCVs which will be posed by operations or other activities in the forest will need to be identified and documented before introducing restrictions. The restrictions shall be valid until there is sufficient evidence that the threat of negative effects does not exist.
- **Restoration activities** where the forest area requires some remedial action, such as removal of alien species or enrichment of riparian functions”.

##### *Precautionary Approach*

At a current level of knowledge about forest ecosystems and their functioning nobody can be entirely sure, which management regime better suits the aim of preservation of high conservation value in each case. Therefore, when developing a management regime for HCVF, the precautionary approach should be implemented. In practice this means the following: “Planning, management activities and monitoring of the attributes that make a forest management unit a HCVF should be designed, based on existing scientific and indigenous/traditional knowledge, to ensure that these attributes do not come under threat of significant reduction or loss of the attribute and that any threat of reduction or loss is detected long before the reduction becomes irreversible. Where a threat has been identified, early preventive action, including halting any potentially detrimental action, should be taken to avoid or minimize such a threat despite lack of full scientific certainty as to causes and effects of the threat” (FSC Principle 9 Advisory Panel, 2000)

**Management regimes for different categories of HCVF.** In all HCVF, the following activities could be permitted if they are legal unless they are prohibited by the regulatory acts or otherwise recommended by the experts engaged in the consultation process:

- public access for recreational activities (without camping and fires);
- hunting and fishing; and
- collection of non-timber forest products (mushrooms, berries, medicinal plants and cones).

In all HCVF (with some exceptions), the following activities cannot be permitted:

- construction of long-lasting objects;
- installation of main communication lines;
- exploration and mining of mineral resources;
- alteration of the hydrological regime;
- activities implying high visitor pressure;
- use of chemical and biological control agents;
- use of fire (prescribed burning, burning of post-harvest residues etc.) for any purposes; and
- introduction of exotic species.

The management regime shall correspond to the HCV category. Thus, in order to ensure conservation of biodiversity and landscape (**HCV 1–3**) severe management restrictions (including strict conservation up to the status of protected nature area) are recommended. Protective purposes may be reached only by modifying management activities.

**HCV 1, 3 and 6**, as a rule, require that all (with some exceptions) harvest and other management activities are prohibited. For **HCV 4 and 5**, commercial harvesting and any other clearcuts shall be prohibited, and additional management constraints shall be introduced. For **HCV 2**, prohibition of harvest operations or zoning of the area (each zone may have its own management regime, although strict conservation zones are obligatory). Other management regimes are possible provided they are approved by the stakeholders.

The management regime can be the same for the whole HCVF or vary depending on its zoning in accordance with available high conservation values and functions. All HCVF, with some exceptions, require measures on fire prevention and fire management.

Currently, the following main options for HCVF management may be recommended:

- announcement of a voluntary moratorium on any harvest operations in the area (setting aside) and further promoting establishment of a protected nature area or reserving the land for a candidate protected nature area;
- establishment of protective forests and OZU; and
- refusal from lease rights for HCVF.

Creation of a protected area (either federal or regional) can be recommended for **HCV 1** (large areas), **2** and **6**. Creation of OZU can be recommended for **HCV 1** (small areas), **3, 4** and **5**. When extending a lease agreement, it is advisable to exclude a large wilderness area from the lease (basically for **HCV 2**).

### Key Requirements for HCVF

- The organization shall establish contacts and hold negotiations with regional organizations, which declared themselves stakeholders in HCVF, if any (see the list of stakeholders on the website fsc.ru).
- Each HCV category (in some cases, subcategory and level) shall be identified individually in accordance with its national interpretation (see below).
- Evidence of the absence of any HCV category (subcategory, level) shall be provided.
- The organization shall have maps of HCVF, which shall show different categories of HCV.
- The organization shall have a HCVF monitoring and control system.
- Information about all HCV categories, including maps, shall be publicly available.

The match of HCVF, protective forests and OZU (see Table E1) is partial. Thus, full compliance with the Russian legislation regarding protective forests and OZU shall not replace the complete scope of works on identification, conservation and monitoring of HCVF in accordance with the above mentioned key requirements.

**Table E1.** Approximate matches of HCVF, protective forests and OZU<sup>32</sup>

HCV <sup>33</sup> category (subcategory)	Categories of protective forests matching with these HCV	OZU categories matching with these HCV
---	---	--

<sup>32</sup> Names of categories of protection forests and OZU are given in consistency with the Forest Code of the Russian Federation (2006) and Forest Inventory Manual (2008).

<sup>33</sup> Categories and subcategories of HCV having no matches among protective forests categories and OZU provided in the Russian legislation are not included.

**Russian National FSC Standard**

<b>HCV<sup>33</sup> category (subcategory)</b>	<b>Categories of protective forests matching with these HCV</b>	<b>OZU categories matching with these HCV</b>
HCV 1.1. Protected nature areas (PNA)	Forests in protected natural areas	1) Protected parts of state nature reserves and other protected nature areas 2) Forests in protective (buffer) zones of state nature reserves, national parks and other protected nature areas, as well as areas reserved as candidate federal protected areas
HCV 1.2. Threatened and endangered species		1) Zapovednye lesnye uchastki (reserve forest areas) – <i>probably</i> 2) Forest areas containing relic and endemic plants 3) Habitats of rare, threatened and endangered wildlife species
HCV 1.3. Endemic species		1) Zapovednye lesnye uchastki (reserve forest areas) – <i>probably</i> 2) Forest areas containing relic and endemic plants 3) Habitats of rare, threatened and endangered wildlife species
HCV 1.4. Critical temporal use (key seasonal habitats of animals)		1) Zapovednye lesnye uchastki (reserve forest areas) – <i>probably</i> 2) Forest areas containing relic and endemic plants 3) Habitats of rare, threatened and endangered wildlife species, forest areas around capercaillie leks 4) Forest strips along rivers or other water bodies inhabited by beavers
HCV 3. Areas that are in or contain rare, threatened and endangered ecosystems		Zapovednye lesnye uchastki (reserve forest areas) – <i>probably</i>
HCV 4.1. Forest critical to water catchments	1) Forests in water protection zones; 2) forests protecting natural or other objects: a) forests located in the first and second belts of sanitary protection zones around the sources of drinking and domestic and industrial water supply	1) Coast protective and soil protective forests alongside water bodies and ravine slopes 2) Protective forest belts along ridges and water divides (watersheds)
HCV 4.2. Forest critical to erosion control	Valuable forests: b) erosion control forests; c) forests in deserts, semi-deserts, forest-steppe, forest tundra, steppes and mountains; d) ribbon-like relic forests	1) Coast protective and soil protective forests located alongside water bodies and ravine slopes 2) Forest strips bordering the treeless area in the mountains 3) Forest areas on steep mountain slopes

## Russian National FSC Standard

HCV <sup>33</sup> category (subcategory)	Categories of protective forests matching with these HCV	OZU categories matching with these HCV
HCV 5. Areas fundamental for meeting basic needs of local communities (subsistence, health)	1) forests protecting natural or other objects: c) green zones, forest parks; d) urban forests; e) forests located in the first, second and third (mountain) sanitary protection zones around medical treatment and rehabilitation sites and resorts; 2) valuable forests: d) forests of scientific or historical significance; e) nut harvest areas	1) Forests surrounding sanatoria, children's recreation camps, vocation retreats, resorts, tourist camps and other medical treatment and recovery facilities 2) Forest surrounding mineral springs that are used for medical treatment and recovery purposes or have a potential for such use 3) Forest strips along approved federal or regional-level permanent tourist routes 4) Forests surrounding rural settlements and <u>gardener communities</u>

### Information for consideration

The procedure for development of HCVF management system may be as follows:

- delineating and mapping of HCVF area;
- gathering information about the environmental value of the area and making a description (e.g. rare species occurring, special protective functions, critical importance for the local people);
- development of the management regime (strict conservation, restricted forest use, control of other activities);
- selecting the type of activity;
- incorporation of the location and regime of HCVF into the forest management plan.

## National Interpretation of HCVF

HCVF interpretation given below means that all areas described therein are candidate HCV, as their high conservation value is proved by the *ad hoc* research. The relevant research was, however, performed at a large geographic scope (from regional to global) and partially employing remote sensing methods. They may not take into account various peculiarities of an individual lease area. Thus, when deciding on designation of HCV within a lease area, local social and economic factors should be considered. The final decision on HCVF designation shall be made on the basis of large-scale consultations taking into account economic and social values of the areas, the environmental value, especially at international and national level, being a priority. An exception to the rule may be cases when alternative research provides sufficient evidence of the environmental value being determined incorrectly or lost.

### *HCV 1: Forest areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values*

In consistency with the National FSC Standard, the category **HCV 1** (first part of article a) as “a territory (ecoregion) characterized by globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values and/or contains other objects with high biodiversity (protected areas, important bird areas, wetlands of international importance etc.)” (Indicator 9.1.1).

The **global level, HCV 1** areas are areas of the WWF's map of the Global 200 ecoregions (Olson and Dinerstein, 1998) – the list of the 233 globally most biologically outstanding habitats.

### Information for consideration

The WWF list of global ecoregions (hereinafter “WWF ecoregion”) is the result of regional analysis of biodiversity across the Earth's continents and oceans. Following the analysis, the ecoregions were selected for all major types of terrestrial, freshwater and marine habitats (MHT). They were chosen based on the region's species diversity, endemism, extraordinary ecological or evolutionary phenomena etc.

The WWF ecoregion may be constituted by several smaller ecoregions each representing one of the habitat types (i.e. terrestrial, freshwater and marine ecoregions). A total of 26 ecoregions has been designated

Of the WWF ecoregions occurring in Russia, the following ones are forest ecosystems:

### Russian National FSC Standard

- Russian Far East Temperate Forests (WWF ecoregion code is 71), which include the terrestrial ecoregions Ussuri broadleaf and mixed forests (terrestrial ecoregion code is PA0443) and South Sakhalin–Kurile mixed forests (PA0438);
- European–Mediterranean Montane Mixed Forests (77), which include the terrestrial ecoregion Crimean Submediterranean forest complex (PA0416), whose Russian part is represented by northwest flanks of the Northern Caucasus;
- Caucasus–Anatolian–Hyrcanian Temperate Forests (78), which include the terrestrial ecoregion Caucasus mixed forests (PA0408);
- Altai–Sayan Montane Forests (79), which include the terrestrial ecoregions Altay montane forest and forest steppe (PA0502) and Sayan montane conifer forests (PA0519);
- Ural montane forests and tundra (83);
- Eastern Siberian Taiga (84);
- Kamchatka Taiga and Grasslands (85), which include the terrestrial ecoregions Kamchatka–Kurile meadows and sparse forests (PA0603), Kamchatka–Kurile taiga (PA0604) and Kamchatka Mountain tundra and forest tundra (PA1105).

Besides, in 2008, WWF adopted a new WWF Global Programme Framework describing 35 global priority regions which are the blueprint of WWF’s conservation efforts. These include, in particular, **Arctic**, which was added due to the growing concern in relation with the climate change and enhanced vulnerability of this region under global warming and intensively developing management activities.

#### Information for consideration

There also are two freshwater WWF ecoregions, whose existence significantly depends on forests on their basins:

- Russian Far East Rivers and Deltas (181) (although this ecoregion mainly consists of water bodies, which are partially included in the Ussuri broadleaf and mixed forests WWF ecoregion;
- Lake Baikal (184), which is partly included in the Eastern Siberian Taiga and Altai–Sayan Montane Forests WWF ecoregions.

More detailed information about these ecoregions can be obtained on websites [http://www.panda.org/about\\_wwf/where\\_we\\_work/ecoregions/ecoregions.cfm](http://www.panda.org/about_wwf/where_we_work/ecoregions/ecoregions.cfm) and [http://www.nationalgeographic.com/wildworld/profiles/g200\\_index.html](http://www.nationalgeographic.com/wildworld/profiles/g200_index.html) II

Specific recommendations to be applied in the practice of forest use are developed for a few regions. For the ecoregions indicated below the following should be used.

In the **Russian Far East Temperate Forests WWF Ecoregion** (Primorskiy Kray, Khabarovsk kray and Jewish Autonomous Oblast) “*Methodical Guidelines for Identification of Special Protection Forest Habitats in Habitats and Sites of Occurrence of Rare and Protected Species of Animals and Plants, as well as of Valuable Game Animals in Forest of the Southern Russian Far East*” (Methodical ..., 2010) prepared by Far Eastern Forestry Research Institute (DalNIILKh) in 2006 shall be observed unless there is an evidence that sites designated following the methodology have no conservation value (the designated communities are not rare, the designated areas are not habitats of rare and hunting animals or redlisted plants).

In Primorskiy Kray, Khabarovsk Kray and Jewish Autonomous Oblast, areas shown as HCVF according to the publication “*Mapping High Conservation Value Forests of Primorskiy Kray, Russian Far East: Categories Important for Preservation of Flora and Vegetation*” (Aksenov *et al.*, 2006) and similar publication covering the south of Khabarovsk Kray and EAO shall be referred to as HCVF.

In the **Altai–Sayan Montane Forests WWF Ecoregion** (republics of Altay, Buryat, Tuva and Khakassia, Altay and Krasnoyarsk krays and Irkutsk and Kemerovo oblasts), candidate protected areas listed in the protected nature areas development plan *Econet of the Altai–Sayan Region* (2001) shall be referred to as HCVF; maps of intact forest landscapes shall be also referred to as HCVF (Aksenov *et al.*, 2003). Important plant areas of the Altai–Sayan ecoregions shall be preserved (see below).

In the Republic of Bashkortostan, (**Ural montane forests and tundra WWF Ecoregion**), areas consistent with the *Concept of Protected Nature Areas System in the Republic of Bashkortostan*



## Russian National FSC Standard

(approved by order of the Government of the Republic of Bashkortostan No. 209 of September 1, 2003) and Ecological Network of the Republic of Bashkortostan (Pazhenkov *et al.*, 2005).

In Komi Republic (**Ural montane forests and tundra WWF Ecoregion**), pristine forests (devstvennye lesa) shall be referred to as HC VF based on the inventory documents (Pristine forests..., 2004).

The HCV 1.1 subcategory includes protected areas as well as official candidate areas (see *Annex D*).

### Information for consideration

In 2004, regular VII Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity, which Russia joined in 1995, took place. The conference adopted a **Programme of Work on Protected Areas**, which set up general requirements and approaches to PA for all participant countries. One of the key goals of the programme is to establish representative PA systems at the national and regional levels. Reaching this goal is the international obligation of Russia, a country participating in the Convention on Biological Diversity.

For this purpose, following the request of the Ministry of Natural Resources of RF, WWF Russia developed proposals for establishing a federal PA network in 2006–2008. These proposals rely on uniform criteria of areas designation. Conservation of these areas is actually an international obligation of Russia. Thus, these areas may be referred to as candidate areas. Unfortunately, this has not been fixed in any regulatory acts yet

### Information for consideration

FSC standard for controlled wood (FSC-STD-40-005 (V2-0) EN), considers as **international level HCV 1** the global biodiversity hotspots identified by the Conservation International.

The concept of biodiversity hotspots was proposed in 1998 for answering the question: what areas are most important for preserving biodiversity on a global scale? These areas are especially diverse in endemic species, although the total area of natural habitats in them makes up just 2.3% of the land surface of the Earth. Each such area is under significant threat and has lost at least 70% of the natural vegetation. 34 such areas having at least 1,500 endemic plant species each were designated (<http://www.biodiversityhotspots.org/Pages/default.aspx>).

In Russia, there is only one such area “The Caucasus”. It stretches over several countries and has the area of 500,000 km<sup>2</sup>. In Russia, it includes republics of Adygeya, Dagestan, Ingushetia, Kabardino-Balkaria, Karachay-Cherkessia and Northern Ossetia—Alania, Krasnodar and Stavropol krais and Rostov Oblast. Specific measures for biodiversity conservation to be applied in the forest management practice have not been developed yet

Areas being identified under various international programs also fall under criteria of the **international level HCV 1**:

- wetlands of international importance (Ramsar wetlands);
- important bird areas of Russia; and
- important plant areas (IPA).

Other valuable nature areas of different levels could be identified within these programs. They are also to be referred to as HC VF.

In Russia, IPA – natural areas most important for conservation of the diversity of flora and vegetation – are identified in the Altay–Sayan ecoregion, in particular, in Altay Kray, Kemerovo Oblast, republics of Altay, Khakassia and Tuva. A total of 82 IPA was identified, most of which include forested areas. The list of identified IPA, lists of species and their habitats, as well as necessary conservation measures may be found in the publication Klyuchevye botanicheskie territorii (2009).

### Information for consideration

#### Important Plant Areas

Identification of important plant areas (IPA) is the initiative of Plantlife, an international nongovernmental organization. In 1995, Plantlife and the French Ministry of Environment held a conference Planta Europa, the first European conference on wildlife protection. Since that, Planta Europa has turned into a network of specialists working on the conservation of rare plants of Europe and their habitats. The main project is aimed at identifying IPA in Europe. IPA are “natural or semi-natural areas exhibiting exceptional botanical richness and/or supporting an outstanding assemblage of rare, threatened and/or endemic plant species and/or vegetation of high botanical value”. Planta Europa aims to make up a list of European IPA using criteria common for all countries. In Russia, however, this process is very slow and covers a very limited number of regions.

#### Important Bird Areas of Russia (IBA (R))

The designation of important bird areas (IBAs) is the program being implemented by Russian Bird

Conservation Union since 1994. Its international component is part of the global program on important bird areas (IBAs) by the Birdlife International, which has been developed in the 1980s. The Important Bird Areas are terrestrial and sea areas which are of critical importance for birds because they use them as breeding and staging sites, wintering grounds and migratory bottlenecks. Their conservation will be crucial for preserving any given species, subspecies and populations of birds. First and foremost, these include:

- Sites inhabited by globally threatened species.
- Sites abundant in other rare or vulnerable species (subspecies or populations), including those listed in various red data books.
- Sites that hold a significant assemblage of endemic species or the species whose breeding distributions are largely or wholly confined to one biome.
- Sites that have exceptionally large numbers of migratory or congregatory species.

The area can be recognized as an IBA based on quantitative criteria developed by the Birdlife International, which are the same within large regions. In Russia, there are three such regions: 1) European Russia; 2) Western Siberia (from the Ural mountains to the Yenisey River); and 3) Eastern Siberia and the Far East. IBAs can be identified at international, national and regional levels.

As of 2006 more than 1,100 IBAs of different levels have been described in Russia, 700 of them being the international level ones. Information on 218 IBAs of European Russia and 170 IBAs of Eastern Asian Russia are included in European (Important Birds Areas in Europe..., 2000) and Asian (Important Birds Areas in Asia, 2004) catalogs of IBAs of international importance. Presently, considering already published volumes on the IBAs in European Russia and Western Siberia (Important Bird Areas of International..., 2000; 2006; 2009), the first stage of the inventories of IBA of international importance has been completed. These publications contain criteria for IBA identification, lists of bird species and information on a particular IBA, including proposed management methods. Information on IBAs in Eastern Siberia and the Russian Far East has not been published yet. The IBA network is expected to expand further. More details about IBA see <http://www.rbcu.ru/programs/IBA/>.

#### Wetlands

As a result of the implementation of the Ramsar Convention, there are 35 wetlands of international importance, especially as waterfowl habitat, in Russia. Some of them share territories with existing PNA.

Inventories of valuable wetlands are not completed. Specialists estimate (Wetlands of International Importance..., 1998) that there are at least several thousand such sites in Russia, each with an area ranging from several tens to several hundreds of million hectares.

A decision to grant such status to a wetland is taken by the Government of the Russian Federation. To ensure the implementation of the convention, wetlands of national and local importance shall acquire the respective PNA status, while sites of all three categories shall become protected areas.

Each signatory country shall prepare a shadow list of Ramsar wetlands to be included into the convention. In Russia such a "shadow list", which includes 166 areas, has been developed by the experts of the All-Russia Research Institute for Nature Conservation on a request from the former Committee for Environment Protection of the Russian Federation (Wetlands on the Shadow List..., 2000).

There are no yet common approaches, designation criteria and maps for other **national** and **regional level HCV 1**. Therefore, the decision shall be taken on a case by case basis using large scale stakeholder consultations involving experts.

**Management regimes in HCV 1. For international HCV 1 (WWF Global 200 ecoregions),** the following is recommended:

1. any timber harvest shall:
  - a) preserve all trees, shrubs and lianas prohibited for harvest by the federal or regional laws;
  - b) preserve all trees, shrubs and lianas that are rare, threatened or endangered in a particular region (e.g. noble broadleaf trees, Siberian larch and Siberian pine in the taiga zone of European Russia);
  - c) preserve to the greatest extent possible the residual trees of non-target species; large cavity trees; trees with large bird nests, seed trees; and large windthrow resistant dying trees and snags located at the distance from roads, landings etc. as well as such trees left within clumps and groups;
2. preserve rare, threatened or endangered ecosystem (forest) types;
3. give preference to selection cuts in even-aged dark (spruce and fir) coniferous, mixed coniferous–broadleaf and broadleaf forests, which develop in the absence of fires;

## Russian National FSC Standard

4. use narrow clear-strip cuts, shelterwood (multistage) cuts and clearcuts in such forest types (see point 3) provided they correspond to peculiarities of the natural dynamics of a particular forest type and are aimed to minimize their impact (e.g. the width of strips, including technological parts of the harvest area, shall be limited by a height of the dominant tree canopy or small-size clearcuts shall be used, thus providing preservation of groundcover and soils);
5. in other forest types, use clearcuts mimicking the natural dynamics of a particular forest type and retaining seed trees, ecologically valuable trees (see point 1) as well as critical habitats (key habitats) and, depending on a situation, of young growth and small-size trees; and
6. exclude the use of fire for any purposes.

During management planning, all available materials containing proposals on identification of HC VF, wetlands, important bird areas, protective forests, special protection forest habitats, plans for establishment of protected areas and ecological networks shall be considered.

In addition, systematic efforts shall be undertaken to ensure identification and conservation of rare, threatened and endangered species habitats on the basis of the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation or relevant regional red data books or lists of such species.

The management regime in **HCV 1.1 (protected nature areas)** shall ensure management restrictions that are not less strict than those prescribed by the legal management regime of an existing or candidate protected area. When the management regime of a protected area in addition restricts other activities (visiting, hunting, fishing, collection of NTFPs and fires), the applicant shall control these activities.

The management regimes in **HCV 1.2–1.4** shall be aimed at maintenance of characteristics of rare, threatened and endangered species habitats. The respective regimes should be developed on the basis of knowledge of biology of a particular species of high conservation value considering identified sites of conservation importance. For example, selection cuts (and even clearcuts) by themselves do not exert a threat to some wildlife species. However, the disturbance to animals caused by harvest operations should be taken into account. In such cases, seasonal restriction for harvesting shall be applied. Some species may tolerate harvesting (or winter harvesting) but require deadwood for their existence. For conservation of plants it will be sufficient to restrict management activities in buffer zones around their protected habitats.

When is not possible to prove that a particular type of harvesting does not threaten to species conservation, the precautionary approach shall be used that means than a strict conservation regime shall be established in the area.

### ***HCV 2: Globally, regionally or nationally significant large landscape level forest areas***

According to the Russian National FSC Standard, the **HCV 2** category (second part of article a) is a forest area that “is part of a large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency (or contains such a landscape)”.

Currently the **HCV 2 category** at the **international** and **national levels** corresponds to the concept of intact forest landscapes (IFL) – the term proposed by Global Forest Watch Russia. The detailed maps of IFL can be found in the *Atlas of Russia’s Intact Forest Landscapes* (Aksenov *et al.*, 2002; 2003; [http://hcvf.net/eng/search/russia\\_ifl\\_map.html](http://hcvf.net/eng/search/russia_ifl_map.html)).

#### **Information for consideration**

More details about peculiar ecological features of these forests, their conservation value as well as the identification methods can be found in *The Last Intact Forest Landscapes of Northern European Russia* (Yaroshenko *et al.*, 2001a; 2001b). A similar approach to identification of large forest landscapes is used when developing the FSC Boreal Standard for Canada – the country closest to Russia in terms of its natural conditions.

In this research, an intact forest landscape is understood as a landscape in the forest zone greater than 50 thousand hectares that is whole and natural, undivided by infrastructure and almost entirely unaffected by human activities. It is large enough to support viable populations of large predatory vertebrates and keep most of the territory free of edge effects. It typically contains a mosaic of ecosystems (i.e. it is more than a forest) and has a natural fire regime.

The priority of protection intact (low-disturbed) areas is stated in the Article 4 of the Federal Law of RF on Environment Protection: “Priority in protection shall be given to natural ecological systems, nat-

ural landscapes and natural complexes, which have been unaffected by human agency.”

Russian NGOs attribute importance to conservation of IFL, declaring themselves as stakeholders for IFL and require that certified companies take efforts in this respect. A Declaration of NPO on Environmental Value of Russian IFL is adopted (see below).

The Russian standard also requires conservation of IFL in full or via designation of strict conservation zones therein surrounded by buffer zones where best practices are applied (indicators 9.3.3–9.3.6).

Criteria for **regional level HCV 2** will be different from those for national level HCV 2; there are no common criteria yet. The decision shall be made in each particular case based on wide scale consultations.

**Regional level HCV 2** were identified in the republics of Komi and Karelia, Kirov Oblast, Jewish Autonomous Oblast, Khabarovsk Kray (partially) and Primorskiy Kray. In all regions similar principles and methodologies for their identification were used.

**Management regimes in HCV 2.** To ensure preservation of **national level HCV 2** intact forest landscapes (IFL) the following measures shall be taken<sup>34</sup>:

1. The most valuable parts of IFL (strict conservation zones) shall be identified. Such areas shall be compact in shape and significant in size to serve as reference wilderness areas, in which forestry activities and fragmentation by roads are completely prohibited. The area of the strict conservation zone shall be as large as possible under local social conditions. The long-term conservation of such areas shall be reached through establishment of protected nature areas. As an tentative solution, before a final decision on protecting the area is made, all management operations within the area can be suspended through a logging moratorium (voluntary commitment by the managers, including leaseholders) or of legal land reservation by the state authorities in charge.

2. In the rest of IFL (outside of strict conservation zones) the best available forestry technologies and practices with regard to conservation of biodiversity and forest ecosystem shall be implemented. The introduction of the best available forestry technologies and practices can be gradual depending on existent legislation and possibilities of a particular organization. However, the environmentally responsible organization shall have an approved program for their introduction, which is being implemented. Such technologies and practices may include:

- the use of harvesting techniques that mimic the natural dynamics of the forest in each type of forest or condition;
- the priority use of selection cuts in forest, whose natural dynamics does not include stand-replacing disturbances;
- retention of key elements of the original stand (individual old trees and their groups, buffer zones along any watercourses and lakes, clumps of trees and groups of snags and young growth) to ensure preservation of diversity of forest environment and patchiness of habitats;
- key habitats (critical habitats) – the most valuable forest areas from the standpoint of biodiversity conservation – shall be identified and protected; and
- the use of technologies aimed at natural forest regeneration;
- the use of machinery and technologies that minimize the impact on soils and young growth and pollution of soil and streams; and
- inventories of species and ecosystems that are rare or threatened in a particular region shall be conducted and identified sites shall be protected.

In order to exclude further significant fragmentation, IFL shall be considered when planning road construction.

The similar approach applies to **regional level HCV 2**. Different variants of zoning can be used, ranging from complete protection of the area to its subdivision into areas with different values. However, they shall have the following in common:

- area and all dimensions of reference areas, in which all or the majority of management activities and fragmentation by roads and other communications are prohibited, shall be large; and
- further significant fragmentation of such areas (i.e. fragmentation by permanent roads and other communications) shall be prevented.

<sup>34</sup> According to the *Declaration of Russian Non-Governmental Conservation Organizations on Conservation Values of Intact Forest Landscapes* adopted at the meeting of Russian non-governmental conservation organizations on Western Siberian forests in Novosibirsk, December 22, 2006 ([http://wwf.ru/about/what\\_we\\_do/forests/hcvf\\_2/event\\_hcvf/novosib](http://wwf.ru/about/what_we_do/forests/hcvf_2/event_hcvf/novosib)).

During harvesting the best available forestry technologies and practices with regard to conservation of biodiversity and forest ecosystem shall be used.

***HCV 3: Forest areas that are in or contain rare, threatened, or endangered ecosystems***

According to the National FSC Standard, **HCV 3** is a “forest area that contains rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems”. Rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems are ecosystems that occupy insignificant area in a particular landscape, region, natural zone or globally due to various reasons (e.g. the uniqueness of natural and historical conditions of development or the results of human agency). There are no common criteria for identification of such ecosystems, neither national lists nor the lists of respective areas used in the practice of forest use.

Some regions have criteria and lists of ecosystems which shall be considered as HCV 3:

- For **Primorskiy Kray** and **Amur River Oblast**, a list of rare ecosystems was developed (Krestov, Verkholat, 2003). Forestry criteria for identifying rare ecosystems are stated in *Methodical Guidelines ... for Identification of OZU* (mentioned above). Observing the *Methodical Guidelines* is enough for preserving rare ecosystems unless otherwise provided by the specialists of the stakeholders.
- In Kirov Oblast, following the project of HC VF identification, the list and characteristics of rare regional ecosystems were developed (see Table). This list was included into the approved lesokhozyaystvenny reglaments of regional lesnichestvos and thus became obligatory.
- Publication “Vyyavlenie i obsledovanie biologicheskikh tsenykh lesov na Severo-Zapade Evropeyskoy Rissuu” (2009) presented a methodology of identification, inspection and mapping of sites of biologically valuable forests (BVF). The methodology is intended for the use in the **Republic of Karelia, Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Peterburg**. It is suitable for identifying HCV 3 in the mentioned regions. Below is a table of rare forest ecosystems, which may be identified without prior special personnel training on the basis of forest inventory findings requiring field verification in some cases (see Table E3).

**Russian National FSC Standard**  
**Table E2.** Rare forest ecosystems of Kirov Oblast

No.	Name	Stand composition	Age of pre-dominant species	Other characteristics notes
1	Fir and spruce forests	Spruce and fir (any percentage of fir in the canopy is permitted; besides spruce, birch is permitted)	100 years and over (actual age, as a rule, is much over 100 years, even if derived from forest inventory materials)	Forest types vary from horsetail-sphagnum to tall fern forests. Old tall trees of mountain ash and goat willow are common in the stand
2	Old-growth coniferous forests	Spruce, fir and pine in any combination and proportions	140 years and over	
3	Old-growth tall-fern forests	Any	100 years and over	Groundcover dominated by tall ferns (gena: Dryopteris, Athyrium, Diplazium)
4	Forests with larch	Any, though larch must be present in the canopy	100 years and over	Advance larch regeneration must be present
5	Forests with noble hardwoods (except in subtaiga zone)	Mature trees of any noble hardwoods must be present in the canopy	70 years and over	
6	Old aspen and aspen-spruce forests	Predominance of spruce or aspen; old large aspen trees (at least 60 cm in diameter) must be present	80 years and over	Large canopy gaps and large-size down deadwood are, as a rule, present. Lichens on aspen bark. The forest shall be preserved in full, i.e. including patches (sections, vydels) of different composition inside it
7	Black alder forests	Black alder, at least 50%	70 years and over	
8	All riparian forests	Any	50 years and over (for birch 80 years and over)	Not necessarily flooded forest, but at least partially bogged or swampy
9	Tall forb spruce forests outside water protection zones	Spruce, at least 50%	100 years and over	The groundcover includes tall forbs ( <i>Cacalia hastata</i> , ostrich fern, senecio etc.)
10	All fens and transitional bogs	Any	Any	With any vegetation
11	Forest edges around open parts of bogs and all forested islands on bogs	Any	Any	Strips 100 m wide
12	All dark coniferous forests or forests with old large aspens (including those in valleys of small rivers and seasonal watercourses, hollows and depressions)	Spruce, fir and aspen, in any combination and proportions	80 years and over	
13	All absolutely uneven-aged forests	Any	Any	With any vegetation

**Table E3.** Biologically valuable forests of the Republic of Karelia, Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod oblasts and Saint Petersburg

No.	Rare forest ecosystem/forest type according to forest inventory (if any)	Indicator for identification by forest inventory	Additional indicator for field verification	Permitted use	Region of application
1.	Nemoral mesophytic spruce forest. Grass-nemoral spruce forest. Hazel and linden spruce forest	Stand composition: spruce with noble hardwoods <sup>35</sup> (any percentage, including in understory); admixture of other broadleaf species (birch, aspen, grey alder) is permitted. The age of the main species in Karelia is 120 years and over, in other regions, 100 years and over. Understory: usually mountain ash, often honeysuckle, sometimes hazel. Groundcover: wood-sorrel and other forbs	The groundcover contains at least three nemoral forbs of the listed below: lungwort ( <i>Pulmonaria obscura</i> ), addersmeat ( <i>Stellaria holostea</i> ), baneberry ( <i>Actaea spicata</i> ), spring vetchling ( <i>Lathyrus vernus</i> ), Kashubian buttercup ( <i>Ranunculus cassubicus</i> ), European wild ginger ( <i>Asarum europaeum</i> ), wonder violet ( <i>Viola mirabilis</i> ), wood forget-me-not ( <i>Myosotis sylvatica</i> ), sweet woodruff ( <i>Galium odoratum</i> )	All types of cuts are prohibited. Fire protection is needed	Republic of Karelia, northern (Karelian Isthmus) and eastern parts (eastward from the Volkhov River) of Leningrad Oblast
2.	Xerophytic pine forest/lichen, cowberry and heather pine forests	Stand composition: Pine, could be with spruce or broadleaf species. The age of main species in Karelia is 160 years and over, in other regions, 120 years and over. Understory: typically juniper, but may be absent. Groundcover: lichens (more than 10% of coverage), the thin layer of grasses and undershrubs is dominated by grasses	The groundcover contains at least three forbs of the listed below: Siberian sandwort ( <i>Eremogone procera</i> ), sand pink ( <i>Dianthus arenarius</i> ), <i>Gypsophila fastigiata</i> , yellowgreen catchfly ( <i>Silene chlorantha</i> ), sand esparsette ( <i>Onobrychis arenaria</i> ), small pasque flower ( <i>Pulsatilla pratensis</i> ), eastern pasqueflower ( <i>P. patens</i> ), spring pasque flower ( <i>P. vernalis</i> ), woolly milk-vetch ( <i>Oxytropis pilosa</i> ), <i>O. sordida</i> , purple milk-vetch ( <i>Astragalus danicus</i> ), <i>A. arenarius</i> , <i>Festuca polesica</i> , glaucous hair grass ( <i>Koeleria glauca</i> ), blue hair grass ( <i>K. grandis</i> ), <i>K. polonica</i>	All types of cuts are prohibited, including salvage cuts after fires. Low intensity grazing is permitted	Republic of Karelia (no findings so far), Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg

<sup>35</sup> For all regions except the Republic of Karelia, northern and eastern parts of Leningrad region, the presence of noble hardwood species is obligatory. If noble hardwoods are present in the stand or young growth composition, no need for assessment of nemoral herbaceous plants in the groundcover.

**Russian National FSC Standard**

No.	Rare forest ecosystem/forest type according to forest inventory (if any)	Indicator for identification by forest inventory	Additional indicator for field verification	Permitted use	Region of application
3.	Calciphytic pine and spruce forests/common wood sorrel pine and spruce forests, forb and nemoral spruce forest	Stand composition: predominance of pine or spruce, admixture of broadleaf species is permitted. The age of main species in Karelia: pine is 140 years and over, spruce 120 years and over, in other regions, spruce and pine is 100 years and over. Understory: goat willow, hazel, juniper, sometimes honeysuckle, buckthorn, dog rose etc. Groundcover: various forbs	Thin soil over limestones or limestone rubble, groundcover includes calciphytes: ore-gano ( <i>Origanum vulgare</i> ), glaucous sedge ( <i>Carex flacca</i> ), red helleborine ( <i>Cephalanthera rubra</i> ), lady's-slipper orchid ( <i>Cypripedium calceolus</i> ), <i>Gentiana cruciata</i> , dropwort ( <i>Filipendula vulgaris</i> ), snowdrop anemone ( <i>Anemone sylvestris</i> )	Commercial cuts and postfire salvage cuts are prohibited. Forest edges and gaps may be cleared retaining old trees and deadwood. Grazing is permitted	Very rare in Leningrad Oblast, may occur in Republic of Karelia, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg
4.	Forests dominated by noble hardwoods/all types of ash, elm, linden and maple forests	Stand composition: predominance of one of the following species: ash, wych elm, European white elm, linden, maple. Admixture of other species is permitted. The age of the predominant species is 60 years and over	- <sup>36</sup>	All types of cuts are prohibited. Fire protection. Creation of buffer zones. If there is an evidence of grazing history, limited grazing is permitted	Republic of Karelia Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg
5.	Oak forests/ all types of oak forests	Stand composition: predominance of oak, admixture of other species is permitted	-	Selection cuts of admixed species and their saplings, especially spruce. Limited grazing is recommended	Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg
6.	Broadleaf forests with noble hardwood species/birch, aspen and gray alder forests of various types	Stand composition: predominance of broadleaf species, the presence of noble hardwoods is shown in the composition of stand or understory. The age of noble hardwoods: in Karelia and eastern Leningrad Oblast, any age (including understory), in other regions, 60 years and over	-	Low and very low intensity cuts of spruce, pine and ordinary broadleaf trees, retaining noble hardwood trees and their saplings. If there is an evidence of grazing history, limited grazing is permitted	Republic of Karelia Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg

<sup>36</sup> Additional field inventories are required only for clarifying the borders and area of the valuable site.



**Russian National FSC Standard**

<b>No.</b>	<b>Rare forest ecosystem /forest type according to forest inventory (if any)</b>	<b>Indicator for identification by forest inventory</b>	<b>Additional indicator for field verification</b>	<b>Permitted use</b>	<b>Region of application</b>
7.	Coniferous forests with admixture of noble hardwood species/various types of spruce and pine forests	Stand composition: predominance of spruce or pine, the presence of noble hardwoods is shown in the composition of stand or understory. The age of predominant species: in Karelia, pine is 140 years and over, spruce is 120 years and over, in other regions, spruce and pine is 100 years and over. The age of noble hardwoods: in Karelia and eastern Leningrad Oblast, any age (including understory), in other regions, 60 years and over	-	All types of cuts are prohibited	Republic of Karelia Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg
8.	Hazel and sparse forests and woodlands with understory of hazel/any types	Stand composition: any, the canopy closure is less than 50%. Understory: hazel with 30% canopy closure	- (if forest inventory materials do not contain information about understory, this should be checked on-site )	Cutting of all saplings except hazel. For hazel stands on former forest meadows, limited grazing is permitted	Republic of Karelia Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg
9.	Black alder forests/all types	Stand composition: predominance of black alder. The age of predominant species: any	-	All types of cuts are prohibited. Buffer zones shall be created	Republic of Karelia and Leningrad Oblast eastwards from the Volkhov River)
10.	Willow forests/all types	Stand composition: predominance of willow. The age of predominant species: 70 years and over. Forests in floodplains, along the coast of the Finnish Gulf and lakes and on bogs	-	All types of cuts are prohibited. Water regime shall be preserved	Republic of Karelia Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg
<b>Additional:</b>					
11.	Pristine forest/any pine, spruce, black alder, willow, ash, elm, linden, maple and oak forests	Old growth stand. No data on historic management activities. The area exceeds 50 ha	No evidence of human impacts (stumps, permanent roads). Traces of pre-industrial types of activity are permitted (hunting, fishing etc.). The stock of snags and down deadwood is natural for this forest type and dynamics	All types of cuts are prohibited	Republic of Karelia Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg
12.	Forest meadow/any types	Mature and over-mature stand of any composition. Canopy closure is less than 50%. The area exceeds 10 ha	The site was earlier used for grazing or hay harvest. All or some trees bear signs of free growth (spread crown, branches in the bole section of the stem etc.)	All types of cuts are prohibited. Limited grazing or hay harvest is permitted	Republic of Karelia Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts and Saint Petersburg

### Russian National FSC Standard

For other regions, there is the following incomplete list of rare forest ecosystems:

- all over European Russia, rare forests are maple and ash forests, as well as forests with significant admixture of oak;
- all over European Russia, rare forests are any forests with larch in the main canopy and/or understory;
- all over European Russia and the Urals, rare forests are dark coniferous (spruce, fir, spruce and fir) forests with nemoral herbaceous plants (*Pulmonaria obscura*, *Lathyrus (Orobis) vernus*, *Milium effusum*, *Melica nutans*, *Paris quadrifolia* and *Stellaria holostea* – not less than three species simultaneously) and/or boreal tall forbs (*Aconitum spp.*, *Cacalia hastata*, *Ligularia sibirica*, *Delphinium elatum*, *Diplazium sibiricum*, *Actaea spp.*, *Cicerbita uralensis*, *Atragene sibirica*, *Bupleurum aureum*, *Lilium pilosiusculum*, *Paeonia anomala*, *Pleurospermum uralense*, *Veratrum lobelianum*, *Crepis sibirica* and *Senecio nemorensis* – not less than three species);
- all over Siberia, the rare forest is intact black taiga – fir–aspen forests with tall forbs and a complex of relic nemoral plants (*Asarum europaeum*, *Asperula odorata*, *Sanicula europaea* and *Sanicula geraldii*);
- in Western Siberia, rare forests are forests with admixture of elm, even as individual trees;
- in all regions, rare forests are old growth black alder forests; and
- in all regions, rare forests are mixed riparian forests dominated by poplar (any species).

All these ecosystems need conservation, unless otherwise recommended by the biology experts (e.g. if any of the listed ecosystem types is common in the certain region or lease area).

Sample lists of rare ecosystems have been drawn out for certain regions: see [http://www.wwf.ru/data/forests/events/rare\\_ecosystems.doc](http://www.wwf.ru/data/forests/events/rare_ecosystems.doc). These shall be used as a starting point of the process involving biology experts for working out recommendations for specific areas.

If there are no any reference lists, rare forest types, in particular, those bordering the habitat thereof (e.g. noble hardwoods in taiga zone) shall be designated as rare ecosystems.

**Management regimes in HCV 3.** The management of **HCV 3** shall ensure the preservation of high conservation values (tree and overall species composition, spatial structures and natural dynamics) of rare, threatened and endangered ecosystems. The management regime should be developed on the basis of knowledge of biology of high conservation value ecosystems considering their borders. In most cases, preservation of high conservation values requires prohibition of all types of harvesting.

When it is not possible to prove that a particular harvesting technique does not threaten conservation of rare ecosystems, the precautionary approach shall be employed that means than a strict conservation regime shall be established.

The regulation of secondary forest use (collection of NTFPs and recreational use) depends on the ecosystem type. Thus, a rare ecosystem of the Russian Far East spruce forest with Asian devil's club (*Oplopanax elatus*) shall be protected by prohibiting or restricting collection of the latter species (a federal level red-listed species; the Red Data Book indicates that the species is threatened by collection for medicinal purposes and recommends to use it resources sustainably). In most rare ecosystems, visiting and collection of ornamental plants are permitted provided that the use of fire is strictly controlled.

It is advisable to include rare ecosystems in protected areas when necessary.

#### ***HCV 4: Forest areas that provide basic services of nature in critical situations (e.g. watershed protection, erosion control)***

According to the National FSC Standard, the **HCV 4** category is interpreted as the “area that provides basic services of nature in critical situations.”

#### **Information for consideration**

Forest areas that provide basic services of nature in critical situations are forests areas, whose state is critically important to maintain the integral ecological stability (functions) of the neighboring areas. There are four main aspects of such ecological stability:

- conservation of sources of drinking water (e.g. forested watersheds of reservoirs supplying potable water for cities);
- regulation of water regime (prevention of flooding, droughts as well as reducing stream flow regulation and water quality);
- control of erosion, landslides, avalanches etc.;
- prevention of catastrophic fires.

Areas with such forests can be found in different categories of protective forests and OZU designated in forests of all groups according the Forest Code, although some areas that meet criteria for such forests could not have any respective formal status.

The Forest Code prescribes complete or partial restriction of forest management in protective forests categories and OZU.

In this respect, **HCV 4** includes most protective forest categories and OZU (see Table), as well as areas, which have no such status but actually perform protective functions.

For the period until the approval of new laws, in accordance with Article 8 of Federal Law “On Enforcement of the Forest Code of the Russian Federation” of December 04, 2006, No.201, forests previously referred to as first group forests are considered as protective forests. All previous regulatory acts on first group forests remain in force.

Besides, forest areas around the lakes less than 50 hectares and moors excluded from water protection zones in accordance with the Water Code, shall be preserved as HCVF (through voluntary refusal to cut or designation as non-exploitable areas during harvest area design). Thus, the below listed forest sites shall be designated as HCVF unless otherwise recommended by the specialists:

- forests around peatlands and bogs near river heads with the width less than 300 meters;
- forests around lakes with the area of less than 50 ha and width of at least 100 meters;
- forest strips with the width of 50 m or more adjacent to water protection zones having width insufficient for ensuring wind load resistance;
- forests around river heads and springs of any form located primarily along the edges of spring, meadow, grass and swampy and other wet forest types.

In general, the *management regime in HCV 4* shall correspond to legal management restrictions of respective protective forests and OZU prescribed by relevant regulations. Sometimes there is a need to check the necessity for thinning and other operations. Upon finding that commercial harvesting has occurred under the name of silvicultural operation, the required preventive measures shall be immediately applied.

***HCV 5 and HCV 6: Forest areas fundamental to meeting basic needs of local communities (e.g. subsistence, health) and/or critical to local communities’ traditional cultural identity (areas of cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance identified in cooperation with such local communities)***

In the Russian standard, the **HCV 5** and **6** categories are unified and are interpreted as “areas that are of special significance for local communities, including religious, cultural, ecological or economic significance.” The identification of such areas is regulated by **Indicator 3.3.2**: “Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance to indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them”, and **Indicator 9.1.5** in part not covered by **Indicators 2.2.3** and **3.3.2**.

**HCV 5** and **6** having economic significance may include areas for gathering non-timber resources, fisheries and hunting areas, hunters’ and fishers’ cabins, parcels for meeting the needs of local people; cultural and religious significance – a sacred grove, pine wood, spring, special stones, chapels, crosses etc.; historical significance – monuments, old cemeteries, mass soldiers’ graves, ancient burial sites on forested hills (zhal’nik), archeological monuments, including burial mounds (kurgans, sopkas), ancient sites etc. Thus, in accordance with the federal and regional laws traditional land use areas (TLUA) can be established in lands of indigenous peoples. TLUA are a type of protected area and shall be considered as **HCV 1.1**.

#### **Information for consideration**

The forest manager should make sure that the game resources of the area are not leased to agricultural production cooperatives, indigenous community, society of hunters and fishermen etc. Rights of these organizations can be confirmed by lease agreement.

Sometimes, hunters and fishermen may use forest resources without taking them into lease on the basis of customary rights. These people are often the former workers of organizations that have disappeared or gone bankrupt during unstable economic conditions of the last decades. Justification of the rights of such people for traditional use of lands may demand consultations with experts.

Of a special value for local communities could be areas where they traditionally collect berries and mushrooms, hunt and fish. Forest can be considered as a common harvest area of the village. For ex-

ample, collection of non-timber products often does not imply even informal documenting of land rights. In order to clarify such situations, local authorities (selsovet, formal community wide gathering of residents (skhod)) shall be contacted.

Indigenous representatives may claim lands, which have been traditionally used by their ancestors and where they want to resume traditional use of natural resources. The 20<sup>th</sup> century has been known for abundant enforced movements of people, while indigenous peoples' rights had been poorly documented in the past. As a result land claims of descendents of the people that lived in the area are difficult to prove. Therefore, in accordance with a globally adopted practice, such claims should be considered in relation to a local indigenous community. The matter of the claim may be assessed by ethnology experts.

For city and town residents green areas in the neighborhood are of significant importance, even though these zones sometimes do not belong to the area of a particular municipality. In this case, the user of forest resources is the local community, whose interests could be represented by the local administration. According to the Forest Code such areas may fall under various categories of protection forests (e.g. forest in green zones of settlements and park forests, first, second and third zones of the area of sanitary (mountain sanitary) protection of resorts, nut harvest areas etc.) and OZU (see Table E1) and of gardeners settlements (sadovye tovarishchestva) as well as other forest areas that meet criteria for such forests but lack legal status. In addition, as HCVF can be considered sites of archeological and historical significance, war memorial sites, mass graves, cemeteries, churches, chapels, areas of former rural estates.

Sacred sites (sacred groves, trees and springs, cult objects, burial sites etc.) are of great value for indigenous communities or ethnic groups (**HCV 6**). In many cases, economical or cultural significance of the forest for local people or indigenous groups can be many times higher than forestry.

Identification of sacred sites can be complicated by a number of reasons. For example, according to beliefs of some indigenous peoples a sacred site will lose its spiritual force after its location becomes known to other people. Therefore, mapping of such sites shall be done very carefully. More details on indigenous peoples see Annex F.

For successful designation of **HCV 5** and **6**, recommendations on social aspects of certification should be considered (Tsyachnyuk et al., 2009). The brief summary of requirements is that complete designation and conservation of **HCV 5** and **6** are possible only in close cooperation with local people and indigenous communities taking into account their wishes. The main method of collection of information about **HCV 5** and **6** is consultations with local people and communities held in the form of meetings, community wide gatherings of residents (skhod) or public hearings as well as individual consultations with hunters, fishers, berry and mushroom collectors, workers of forest management organizations (lesnichestvo), experts in local history, employees of local museums and other competent persons: experts in ethnography, folk art, history and archaeology.

Apart from consultations with local people, requests shall be sent to the local authorities:

- regional inspectorate for protection of historical and cultural monuments;
- regional or local public organizations (e.g. national communities (zemlyachestvo), national and cultural autonomies etc.);
- research and research and educational institutions;
- local department for cultural affairs;
- authorities of rural localities;
- local history museum;
- regional and local libraries;
- regional and districtal hunting management agencies, hunting supervision authorities; and
- regional, districtal and local societies of hunters and fishers.

Requests to such organizations shall take into account their specialization and the staff unawareness of the HCVF concept. For example, a request to the local history museum should refer to identification of historical monuments, sites of military glory etc., a request to the department for cultural affairs shall focus on cultural elements, a request to archaeological institutions shall address archaeological monuments, ancient sites etc.

*The management regime in HCV 5 and 6* shall strongly depend on the needs of local communities. This requires wide scale consultations, whenever possible involving social technologies experts. The management regime in **HCV 5** often corresponds to legal management restrictions of respective protective forests and OZU, while that of **HCV 6** requires stricter protection.

**Russian National FSC Standard**  
**HCVF, Representative Samples of Existing Ecosystems and Ecological Networks**

**Criterion 6.4** requires that: “Representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape shall be protected in their natural state and recorded on maps, appropriate to the scale and intensity of operations and the uniqueness of the affected resources.”

The purpose of this criterion is to create a network of protected sites (with prohibition or restriction of forestry operations), which are functionally interconnected and provide conservation of flora and fauna, landscapes, ecosystems and habitats, including common species and ecosystems in the applicant’s area. In practice, this means that such a network shall:

- include all types of ecosystems and landscapes occurring in the area (i.e. to be representative);
- promote preservation of regionally and locally rare, threatened or endangered types of ecosystems and landscapes;
- ensure settling and migration of species; and
- serve a base for scientific research of natural processes in forests when necessary.

Existing and candidate protected areas, protective forests, special protection forest habitats (OZU) and areas voluntarily set aside by the organization (e.g. HCVF) may function as representative samples of existing ecosystems.

While the aforementioned sites may constitute the majority of the network of representative samples of existing ecosystems, they do not always cover the full diversity of landscapes, ecosystems and habitats. In such cases, the existing protected sites network shall be respectively extended. This is of special importance when the applicant’s area lacks HCVF, or they are absent.

A common approach to designation of representative samples of existing ecosystems shall include the following:

1. Drawing out a list of ecosystems (forest types and non-forest ecosystems – bogs, meadows etc.) of the area being assessed.

2. Drawing out a list of ecosystems out of the aforementioned list, which are not represented in the corresponding protected areas network (PNA, OZU, protection forests and HCVF), or insufficiently represented (less than 1% of the total area of this ecosystem type in the area being assessed is represented in the protected areas network). This list should not include apparently disturbed or secondary ecosystem types and ecosystem types regularly reproduced by management activities (burnt areas, regenerating cutovers, young stands and secondary broadleaf stands).

3. Identification of protected sites for such ecosystems, giving preference to the best preserved, old-growth and overmature stands (for forest ecosystems).

"4. The size, form and mutual location of representative sites shall ensure conservation of the most valuable sites (buffer zones) and the functional integrity of the ecological network (species migration corridors).

In order to create a network of representative samples of existing ecosystems, the applicant shall identify all types of protected sites (protected areas, protective forests and OZU) and HCVF; conduct a gap analysis for representativeness of these sites with respect to the management area; and extend the protected sites network, by adding the ecosystems that are lacking.

**Information for consideration**

Mapping and protection of representative samples of existing ecosystems largely overlaps with an idea to establish the Pan-European Ecological Network – the result of realization of the Pan-European Biodiversity and Landscape Strategy (PEBLS) (see *Annex B*). The Declaration of the 3rd Ministerial Conference “Environment for Europe” formulated its goal to promote nature protection, both inside and outside protected areas, by establishing the Pan-European Ecological Network – a physical network of the core areas and other similar formations linked by corridors and supported by additional buffer zones to make easier settling and migration of species.

The establishment of Pan-European Ecological Network shall promote achievement of the main goals of PEBLDS by solving the following tasks:

- to provide protection of the whole set of ecosystems, habitats, species and their genetic diversity as well as landscapes of European importance;
- to ensure that the habitats are big enough to create conditions favorable for species survival;
- to create necessary possibilities for settling and migration of species;
- to provide restoration of degraded components of the key systems and protection of the systems against potential threats.

The main idea of such network is to avoid negative consequences of fragmentation of natural areas by enabling ecological links among them. Such ecological network shall comprise the following components:

- *core areas* to provide optimally achievable quality and quantity of ecological space to preserve the target object;
- *transit areas*, or *corridors* and *stepping stones* to provide necessary links among the core areas using linear elements of the landscape (proper corridors), fragments of habitats (stepping stones) or landscape matrix;
- *buffer zones* to protect the core and transit areas from potentially dangerous external effects; and
- *restoration zones* to provide restoration of one or another functional component of the ecological network.

Some regions could already have such an ecological network designed. This shall be taken into consideration when identifying HCVF and representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape as well as developing proposals on their management.

### **Monitoring of HCVF**

**Information for consideration**

Monitoring of HCVF is conducted to assess on a regular basis to what extent the maintenance of high conservation values is achieved. The condition of HCVF can be affected by the impact of either management activities (both of the organization itself and other organizations), or natural factors, such forest fires, pest outbreaks etc. The results of monitoring may require revision of the set of protection and/or management measures and correction of the forest management and forest use plans.

Monitoring may be performed by the organization itself, various governmental bodies (Federal Forestry Agency or a body responsible for environmental protection), research institutes and non-governmental conservation organizations in cooperation with organization. Monitoring materials may be used when developing a program on protection of HCVF, key habitats etc., as well as in negotiations with NGOs and the forest management authorities.

In areas for which strict conservation measures are proposed, monitoring of HCVF is the easiest, since it implies mainly keeping a track of records of changes in HCVF attributed to some dramatic natural events (massive windfalls, catastrophic fires etc.), long-term trends (e.g. changes in composition and condition of flora and fauna) and management activities of third parties (including illegal ones). The choice of monitoring method depends on the character of information being collected from foresters, hunters, fishermen etc. and organization's resources and may be based on:

- monitoring of forest condition using satellite imagery;
- data on changes in forest land annually collected by forest management administration;
- field survey materials (zoological, botanical, forest pathology etc.); and
- continuous stationary scientific research.

In areas where management activities are restricted, monitoring of HCVF, besides aforementioned methods, presumes a wider array of monitoring methods and their greater thoroughness.

Thus, it is necessary to assess how the implemented measures ensure the maintenance of high conservation values, both in short-term and long-term perspectives. For example, it should be learnt, whether harvesting leads to stronger windfall or mass decline of trees, higher frequency of fires, noticeable changes in flora and fauna (e.g. looking at disappearance or appearance of certain indicator species) etc.

All information collected during monitoring of HC VF shall be used to assess the efficiency of conservation measures with regard to the overall objective – to ensure maintenance of attributes of high conservation values as well as to assess the implemented management system with respect to biodiversity conservation in general.

The forest manager shall consider the results of monitoring in the implementation of management activities for the current year, by correcting the set and parameters of activities and to revise the forest management plan when necessary.

### References on HC VF

1. Aksenov D., Dobrynin D., Dubinin M. *et al.* *Atlas of Russia's Intact Forest Landscapes*. Moscow: International Socio-Ecological Union; Washington DC: World Resources Institute, 2002. 186 p.
2. Aksenov D., Dobrynin D., Dubinin M. *et al.* *Atlas of Russia's Intact Forest Landscapes* Moscow: International Socio-Ecological Union; Washington DC: World Resources Institute, 2003. 186 p.
3. Aksenov D., Dubinin M., Karpachevskiy M. *et al.* Mapping High Conservation Value Forests of Primorskiy Kray, Russian Far East: Categories Important for Preservation of Flora and Vegetation [Vydelenie lesov vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti v Primorskom kraye. Kategorii, vazhnye dlya sokhraneniya rastitelnogo pokrova]. Vladivostok–Moscow: Izd. MSoES, 2006. 186 p. (In Russ.)
4. Green Book of Siberia [Zelenaya kniga Sibiri]. Novosibirsk: Nauka, 1996. 397 p. (In Russ.)
5. Identification and Survey of Biologically Valuable Forests in the North-Western European Russia. Vol. 1. Methodology of Identification and Mapping [Vyavlenie i obsledovanie biologicheskikh tsennykh lesov na Severo-Zapade Evropeyskoy chasti Rossii. T. 1. Metodika vyavleniya i kartografirovaniya]. Ed. L. Andersson, N.M. Alekseeva, E.S. Kuznetsova. Saint Petersburg, 2009. 238 p. (In Russ.)
6. Identification and Survey of Biologically Valuable Forests in the North-Western European Russia. Vol. 2. Guidelines for Identification of Species Used at Management Unit Level [Vyavlenie i obsledovanie biologicheskikh tsennykh lesov na Severo-Zapade Evropeyskoy chasti Rossii. T. 2. Posobie po opredeleniyu vidov, ispolsuemykh na urovne vydelov]. Ed. L. Andersson, N.M. Alekseeva, E.S. Kuznetsova. Saint-Petersburg, 2009. 258 p. (In Russ.)
7. *Important Bird Areas in Asia. Key Sites for Conservation Series*. Eds. Chan S., Crosby M.J., Islam M.Z. and Tordoff A.W. Cambridge: Birdlife, Birdlife Conservation Series 13, 2004. 297 p.
8. *Important Bird Areas in Europe: Priority Sites for Conservation*. Eds. Heath M.F. and Evans M.I. 2 vols. Cambridge: Birdlife, Birdlife Conservation Series 8, 2000. 866 p. (vol. 1), 791 p. (vol. 2).
9. Important Bird Areas of Russia. Vol. 1. Important Bird Areas of International Importance in European Russia [Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii Rossii. T. 1. Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya v Evropeyskoy Rossii]. Eds. T.V. Sviridova and V.A. Zubakin. Moscow: Soyuz okhrany ptits Rossii, 2000. 702 p. (In Russ.)
10. Important Bird Areas of Russia. Vol. 2. Important Bird Areas of International Importance in Western Siberia [Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii Rossii. T. 2. Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya v Zapadnoy Sibiri]. Ed. S.A. Bukreev. Moscow: soyuz okhrany ptits Rossii, 2006. 336 p. (In Russ.)
11. Important Bird Areas of Russia. Vol. 3. Important Bird Areas of International Importance in the Caucasus Ecoregion [Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii Rossii. T. 3 Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya v Kavkazskom ekoregione]. Ed. S.A. Bukreev, G.S. Dzhamirzoev. Moscow: Soyuz okhrany ptits Rossii, 2009. 302 p. (In Russ.)
12. Important Plant Areas of Altai–Sayan Ecoregion: Identification Experience. [Klyuchevye botanicheskie territorii Altae-Sayanskogo ekoregiona: opyt vydeleniya]. Izd-vo RAN, 2009. 272 p. (In Russ.)
13. Jennings S., Nussbaum R., Jadd H. and Evans T. High Conservation Value Forests: Toolkit [Lesy vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti: prakticheskoe rukovodstvo]. Moscow: 2005. 184 p. (In Russ.)
14. Krestov P.V. and Verkholat V.P. Rare Plant Communities in Primorskiy Kray and Amur Region [Redkie rastitel'nye soobshchestva Primorya i Priamurya]. Vladivostok, 2003. 200 p. (In Russ.)

15. *Methodical Guidelines for Identification of Special Protection Forest Habitats in Habitats and Sites of Occurrence of Rare and Protected Species of Animals and Plants, as well as of Valuable Game Animals in Forest of the Southern Russian Far East* (Methodicheskie ukazania po vydeleniju osobo zaschitnyh uchastkov lesa v mestah rasprostraneniya i obitaniya redkih, okhranyaemyh i tcennyh promyslovyh vidov zhitovnyh i rastenij juga Dalnego Vostoka). Khabarovsk, 2010. 28 p. (In Russ.)
16. Olson D.M. and Dinerstein E. The Global 200: A Representation Approach to Conserving the Earth's Most Biologically Valuable Ecoregions. *Conservation Biology*, 1998, No. 12. pp. 502–515.
17. Pazhenkov A.S., Smelyanskiy I.Ya., Trofimova T.A. and Karyakin I.V. Ecological Network of the Republic of Bashkortostan [*Ekologicheskaya set Respubliki Bashkortostan*]. Moscow: IUCN, 2005. 198 p. (In Russ.)
18. Pristine Forests: Identification, Assessment and Management. Administrative Regulations of the Komi Republic [*Devstvennye lesa: vyyavlenie, otsenka, upravlenie. Normativno-pravovye akty Respubliki Komi*]. Syktyvkar: Serebryannaya taiga, 2004. 24 p. (In Russ.)
19. Skvortsov V.E. *et al.* Practical Guidebook for Forest Workers of Primorskiy Kray [*Prakticheskoe posobie dlya rabotnikov lesnogo kompleksa Primorskogo kraya*]. Vladivostok: WWF, 2006. (In Russ.)
20. Tsyachnyuk M.S., Konyushatov O.A., Kulyasova A.A. *et al.* Recommendations on Social Aspects of FSC Certification [Rekomendatsii po sotsialnym aspektam sertifikatsii po scheme Lesnogo Popechitelskogo Soveta FSC]. Ed. M.S. Tsyachnyuk. Vologda: Poligrafist. 2009 184 p. (In Russ.)
21. Wetlands of International Importance [Vodno-bolotnye ugodya mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya]. In: *Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii*, vol. 1. Ed. V.G. Krivenko. Moscow: Wetlands International Publication, No. 47, 1998. 256 p. (In Russ.)
22. Wetlands on the Ramsar Shadow List. In: *Wetlands in Russia*, vol. 3. Ed. V.G. Krivenko. Wetlands International Global Ser., No. 6, 2000. 490 p.
23. Wetlands on the Shadow List to the Ramsar Convention [Vodno-bolotnye ugodya, vnesennye v Perspektivny spisok Ramsarskoy konventsii]. In: *Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii*, vol. 3. Ed. V.G. Krivenko. Moscow: Wetlands International Global Ser., No. 3, 2000. 490 p. (In Russ.)
24. Yanitskaya T. Guidelines on Identification of High Conservation Value Forests in Russia [Prakticheskoye rukovodstvo po vyddeleniyu lesov vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti v Rossii]. WWF. Moscow, 2008. 136 p. (In Russ.)
25. Yaroshenko A.Yu., Potapov P.V. and Turubanova S.A. *The Last Intact Forest Landscapes of Northern European Russia*. Moscow; Greenpeace Russia, 2001. 75 p.
26. Yaroshenko A.Yu., Potapov P.V. and Turubanova S.A. The Intact Forest Landscapes in Northern European Russia [*Malonarushennye lesnye territorii Evropeyskogo Severa Rossii*]. Moscow: Greenpeace Russia, 2001. 75 p. (In Russ.)



**Russian National FSC Standard**  
**Annex F. Indigenous Peoples<sup>37</sup>**

There is a number of definitions of indigenous peoples accepted in international and Russian practices applicable to this standard. Since 2000 in its interpretation of indigenous peoples FSC follows the Working definition adopted by the UN Working Group on Indigenous Peoples (UN, 1989): “The existing descendants of the peoples who inhabited the present territory of a country wholly or partially at the time when persons of a different culture or ethnic origin arrived there from other parts of the world, overcame them and, by conquest, settlement, or other means reduced them to a non-dominant or colonial situation; who today live more in conformity with their particular social, economic and cultural customs and traditions than with the institutions of the country of which they now form a part, under State structure which incorporates mainly the national, social and cultural characteristics of other segments of the population which are predominant” (FSC-AC, February 2000).

Since March 2002 FSC also included in its requirements the provisions of *ILO Convention No. 169 concerning Indigenous and Tribal Peoples in Independent Countries*<sup>38</sup>. This convention defines as indigenous peoples and applies to:

“(a) Tribal peoples in independent countries whose social, cultural and economic conditions distinguish them from other sections of the national community, and whose status is regulated wholly or partially by their own customs or traditions or by special laws or regulations;

(b) Peoples in independent countries who are regarded as indigenous on account of their descent from the populations which inhabited the country, or a geographical region to which the country belongs, at the time of conquest or colonization or the establishment of present State boundaries and who, irrespective of their legal status, retain some or all of their own social, economic, cultural and political institutions” ...

“2. Self-identification as indigenous or tribal shall be regarded as a fundamental criterion for determining the groups to which the provisions of this Convention apply”.

FSC has recently clarified the definition of indigenous peoples<sup>39</sup>: “Indigenous peoples are peoples and groups of people which are identified or characterized with the following:

- a key characteristics is self identification as indigenous peoples at the individual level and acceptance by the community as their member;
- historical continuity with pre-colonial and/or pre-settler societies;
- strong link to territories and surrounding natural resources;
- distinct social, economic or political systems;
- distinct language, culture and beliefs;
- form non-dominant groups of society; and
- resolve to maintain and reproduce their ancestral environments and systems as distinctive peoples and communities.”

According to the UN the most fruitful approach is to identify, rather than define indigenous peoples. This is based on the fundamental criterion of self-identification as underlined in a number of human rights documents ([www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/5session\\_factsheet1.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/5session_factsheet1.pdf); [www2.ohchr.org/english/issues/indigenous/docs/guidelines.pdf](http://www2.ohchr.org/english/issues/indigenous/docs/guidelines.pdf)).

For the purpose of this standard, indigenous peoples are interpreted as groups of people, which in the course of many generations, identify themselves as an independent ethno-cultural group (ethnos, nation, ethnic group or ethno-cultural group); linked to a particular geographical region; preserve elements of their lifestyle based on traditional uses of natural resources (integrated management of natural resources, which in different combinations, includes animal husbandry, agriculture, hunting and trapping wildlife and the use of timber and non-timber forest products, which are still of cultural importance for these communities).

---

<sup>37</sup> The part of this annex relating to the definition of the notion of “indigenous peoples” is obligatory, the remaining part of the annex is given for information only and offers examples of sources of information.

<sup>38</sup> Russia did not ratify this ILO Convention.

<sup>39</sup> Source: Adapted from publications *United Nations Permanent Forum on Indigenous, Factsheet. Who are indigenous peoples*, October 2007 (according to filename); *United Nations Development Group. Guidelines on Indigenous Peoples' Issues. United Nations 2009, United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples*, 13 September 2007 ([www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/5session\\_factsheet1.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/5session_factsheet1.pdf)).

**Information for consideration**

The Russian legislation contains only a notion of small-numbered indigenous peoples of Russia. Article 1 of Federal Law *On Guaranties of the Rights of Small-Numbered Indigenous Peoples of Russian Federation* (1999) defines them as “Small-numbered indigenous peoples of Russian Federation (hereafter named small-numbered nations) are nations, which inhabit areas traditionally occupied by their ancestors, maintain traditional lifestyles, management systems and use of natural resource, whose numbers does not exceed 50 thousand peoples and who identify themselves as independent ethnic communities.” *The General List of Indigenous Small-Numbered Peoples of Russia* was approved by the Government of the Russian Federation No. 255 on March 24, 2000. In accordance with the aforementioned parameters it contains 45 nations (Table F1). Besides that, some Russian regions have their own lists of indigenous peoples.

Therefore, the Russian legislation on indigenous peoples does not apply to more numbered indigenous peoples, such as Buryats, Karels, Komi, Yakuts, Tuvans and other title nations of republics and autonomous okrugs of the Russian Federation. At the same time, many communities of these nations have traditional lifestyles and uses of natural resources. Furthermore, most of legal rights of indigenous peoples with respect to traditional use of natural resources apply only to indigenous small-numbered peoples of North, Siberia and the Russian Far East. Some small-numbered ethnic groups, which identify themselves as indigenous peoples, e.g. Komi-Izhems and Pomors, are also not listed in the aforementioned lists.

**Table F1.** General List of Indigenous Small-numbered Peoples of Russia\*

<b>Small-numbered peoples of Russia</b>	<b>Administrative region of the Russian Federation, in which live small-numbered peoples of Russia**</b>
Abazins	Republic of Karachay–Cherkessia
Aleuts***	Kamchatka Kray
Alyutors***	Kamchatka Kray
Bisermän	Republic of Udmurtia
Chelkans***	Altay Republic
Chukchi***	Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Kamchatka Kray
Chulyms***	Tomsk Oblast, Krasnoyarsk Kray
Chuvans***	Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Magadan Oblast
Dolgans***	Krasnoyarsk Kray, Republic of Sakha (Yakutia)
Enets***	Krasnoyarsk Kray
Eskimo***	Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Kamchatka Kray
Evenks***	Republic of Sakha (Yakutia), Krasnoyarsk Kray, Khabarovsk Kray, Amur Oblast, Sakhalin Oblast, Buryat Republic, Irkutsk Oblast, Zabaykal'skiy Kray, Tomsk Oblast, Tyumen Oblast
Evens***	Republic of Sakha (Yakutia), Khabarovsk Kray, Magadan Oblast, Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Kamchatka Kray
Itelmens***	Kamchatka Kray, Magadan Oblast
Izhorians***	Leningrad Oblast
Kamchadals***	Kamchatka Kray
Kereks***	Chukotka Autonomous Okrug
Kets***	Krasnoyarsk Kray
Khants***	Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug, Yamalo–Nenets Autonomous Okrug, Tyumen Oblast, Tomsk Oblast, Komi Republic
Koryaks***	Kamchatka Kray, Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Magadan Oblast
Kumandins***	Altay Kray, Altay Republic, Kemerovo Oblast
Mansi***	Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug, Tyumen Oblast, Sverdlovsk Oblast, Komi Republic
Nağaybäks	Chelyabinsk Oblast
Nanais***	Khabarovsk Kray, Primorskiy Kray, Sakhalin Oblast
Negidals***	Khabarovsk Kray
Nenets***	Yamalo–Nenets Autonomous Okrug, Nenets Autonomous Okrug, Arkhangelsk Oblast, Krasnoyarsk Kray, Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug, Komi Republic
Nganasans***	Taymyr (Dolgoro–Nenets) Autonomous Okrug, Krasnoyarsk Kray
Nivkhs***	Khabarovsk Kray, Sakhalin Oblast
Orochs***	Khabarovsk Kray
Oroks (Uhta)***	Sakhalin Oblast
Sami***	Murmansk Oblast

### Russian National FSC Standard

Selkups***	Yamalo–Nenets Autonomous Okrug, Tyumen Oblast, Tomsk Oblast, Krasnoyarsk Kray
Setu (Seto)***	Pskov Oblast
Shapsugs	Krasnodar Kray
Shorians***	Kemerovo Oblast, Republic of Khakassia, Altay Republic
Soyots***	Buryat Republic
Tazs***	Primorskiy Kray
Telengits***	Altay Republic
Teleuts***	Kemerovo Oblast
Tofalars (Tofa)***	Irkutsk Oblast
Tubalars***	Altay Republic
Tuvans-Todzhins***	Tuva Republic
Udege***	Primorskiy Kray, Khabarovsk Kray
Ulchs***	Khabarovsk Kray
Veps***	Republic of Karelia, Leningrad Oblast
Vod'***	Leningrad Oblast
Yukaghirs***	Republic of Sakha (Yakutia), Magadan Oblast

\* Indigenous small-numbered peoples of the Republic of Dagestan are listed in the Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No. 236 of March 28 2001; this list was approved by the State Council of the Republic of Dagestan No. 191 on October 18 2000 *On Peculiarities of the Implementation of the Federal Law On Guaranties of the Rights of Small-numbered Indigenous Peoples of Russian Federation in the Republic of Dagestan*. This list is part of the *General List of Indigenous Small-numbered Peoples of Russia*.

\*\* Names of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation are given in the order of decreasing number of a particular nation living in the region.

\*\*\* Included in the *List of Indigenous Small-numbered Peoples of North, Siberia and the Far East of the Russian Federation* (resolution of the Government of the Russian Federation No. 536-r of April 17 2006 **with changes of May 18 2010**).

This definition also applies to certain ethnic groups, such as century-old traditional communities of Russian descent (Pomors, Old-believers (staroobryadtsy, starovery) and Cossacks) and other groups with a specific culture and self-identification. Local communities of Buryats, Karels, Komi, Yakuts, Tuvans and other title nations of republics and autonomous okrugs of the Russian Federation, who have traditional lifestyles and uses of natural resources, shall be also considered as indigenous peoples. The complexity of the ethnic composition and socio-cultural diversity of local communities occurring in Russia do not permit giving complete descriptions of all ethno-cultural groups. Therefore, the Principle 3 shall be applied to any group, which identifies itself as an indigenous community.

Rights and interest of indigenous communities with respect to protection and use of natural resources in sites of special significance for indigenous peoples (**HCV 5** and **HCV 6**), except **Criterion 3.3**, are also covered by **indicators 9.1.5, 9.3.8** and **9.3.9**.

Traditional nature use by indigenous peoples should be assessed, for example, against the following criteria:

- the areas of the traditional nature use are divided into lands whose borders are recognized by the community members;
- natural resources are traditionally used by several generations of the community representatives or their descendants are trying to resume it;
- the traditional use of natural resources is a significant source of income or resources for the community representatives;
- representatives of the indigenous community have customary (including traditional) rights and/or legal rights to the traditional nature use lands (lease, gratuitous use) or take relevant efforts to legally confirm the status of their lands (if required by the effective laws);
- traditional use of natural resources by the community does not deplete the used resources as assessed by experts and representatives of the local people.

**Russian National FSC Standard**  
**References**

1. Document Management. Holding Meetings and Negotiations. [*Organizatsia raboty s dokumentami. Provedenie soveschaniy i peregovorov*]. Ed. Bocharnikova T. B. Series: Biblioteka korennykh narodov Severa, vyp. 9. Moscow, 2005. 54 p. (In Russ.)
2. Kryukov V.A. and Tokarev A.N. Consideration of Interests of Indigenous Small-Numbered Peoples when Making Decisions on Subsoil Use [*Uchet interesov korennykh malochislennykh narodov pri prinyatii resheniy v sfere nedropolzovania*]. Series: Biblioteka korennykh narodov Severa, vyp. 10, Moscow, 2005. 172 p. (In Russ.)
3. Zasukhin D.P., Klochikhin A.N. and Navalikhin A.C. Rules of Designation of Areas for Mass Collection of Mushrooms and Berries by Local People on the Territory of the State Forest Fund [*Polozhenie o vydelenii uchastkov massovogo sbora gribov i yagod mestnym naseleniem na territorii gosudarstvennogo lesnogo fonda*]. Syktyvkar, 2004. (In Russ.)
4. Review of Laws and Regulations of Arctic Countries on Protection of Indigenous Peoples Rights [*Obzor zakonov i normativnykh aktov Arkticheskikh stran po zaschite prav korennykh narodov*]. Ed. Sulyandziga R.V., Series: Biblioteka korennykh narodov Severa, vyp. 8. Moscow, 2005. 155 p. (In Russ.)
5. Guidelines on Public Hearings in the Sphere of Forestry [*Rukovodstvo po provedeniyu obschestvennykh slushaniy v sfere lesopolzovania*]. WWF, Arkhangelsk, 2005. (In Russ.)
6. Semyashkina V.T., Pautov Yu.A., Punegova L.A. and Osipova E.E. Recommendations on Arranging Public Hearings [*Rekomendatsii po provedeniyu obschestvennykh slushaniy*]. Syktyvkar, 2004. (In Russ.)
7. Sulyandziga R.V., Kudryashova D.A. and Sulyandziga P.V. Indigenous Small-Numbered Peoples of the North, Siberia and Far East of the Russian Federation. Review of Current State [*Korennye malochislennye narody Severa, Sibiri i Dalnego Vostoka Rossiyskoy Federatsii. Obzor sovremennogo polozhenia*]. Moscow, 2003. 142 p. (In Russ.)
8. Turaev V.A. Sulyandziga R.V., Sulyandziga P.V. and Bocharnikov V.N. Encyclopedia of Indigenous Small-Numbered Peoples of the North, Siberia and Far East of the Russian Federation [*Entsiklopedia korennykh malochislennykh narodov Severa, Sibiri i Dalnego Vostoka Rossiyskoy Federatsii*]. Series: Biblioteka korennykh narodov Severa, Moscow, 2005. 464 p. (In Russ.)
9. Tsyachnyuk M.S., Kulyasova A.A., Kulyasov I.P. and Malets O. Organization of Work with the People on FSC Certification: Observation of principles 1, 3, 4 and 9 [Organizatsia raboty s naseleniem v svyazi s sertifikatsiyey po sisteme FSC: vypolnenie printsipov 1, 3, 4, 9]. *Ustoichivoye lesopolzovanie*, No. 1 (13), 2007. P. 37-42. (In Russ.)
10. Tsyachnyuk M.S. and Kulyasova A.A. Social Categories of HCVF: Kinds and Methods of Identification. [Sotsialnye tipy LVPTs: vidy i metody vydeleniya]. *Ustoichivoye lesopolzovanie*. 2007. No. 3 (15). P. 40-44. (In Russ.)
11. Tsyachnyuk M.S., Konyushatov O.A., Kulyasova A.A., Kulyasov I.P. and Teslya I.V. Recommendations on Social Aspects of FSC Certification [*Rekomendatsii po sotsialnym aspektam sertifikatsii po scheme Lesnogo Popechitel'skogo Soveta FSC*]. Ed. M.S. Tsyachnyuk. Vologda: Poligrafist. 2009 184 p. (In Russ.)

## Annex G. Glossary

**Administrative and public control:** The main tool of the management and trade union committee (or other representative workers structure) to ensure control of health and safety at working places, production units, shops as well as observation by all services, managers and staff of the requirements of the work legislation, safety and health standards, regulations, instructions and other normative and technical documentation on work health and safety in the system of personal health and safety and industrial security. The administrative and public control (APC) at the organization is regulated by an administrative order or special organization's standard.

The APC is aimed to involve workers and engineers in activities to improve work conditions at the organization, routines to avoid accidents at work places, prophylactics of professional diseases and working culture.

Generally APC is established at three levels (stages):

- level 1: a production unit for shift or brigade, department, laboratory, repair division etc.;
- level 2: shop, department etc.; and
- level 3: the organization as a whole.

APC is managed by the organization's manager and the head of the trade union committee or other representative structure authorized by workers. The records of APC are kept in a special register of the relevant level. In the absence of APC, health and safety control functions can be implemented by a health and safety committee (commission). Such a committee shall have equal representation of employer and trade union (or other structure authorized by the staff).

**Afforestation:** Creation and planting of human-made forests in areas, which were not a forest before.

**Annual allowable cut (AAC):** Annual quota of final felling (commercial harvesting), being calculated for district level forest management administration unit. Since 2007 shall also account for wood harvested during **forest management operations** (thinning), salvage and **other categories of cuts**. At areas leased for wood harvesting the **AAC for leased forest area** is used instead of AAC.

**Annual Allowable Cut for Forest Lease:** Annual allowable quota of commercial timber harvest for a particular forest lease (concession). It is obtained by re-calculating the **allowable annual cut** assigned for the district level forest management administration unit considering information on forest blocks (kvartals) given into lease. Since 2007 shall also include timber removals during **forest management operations** (thinning) and salvage logging.

**Authorized representative of indigenous peoples (local people):** Public organizations of **indigenous peoples** or their entities (unions, associations) or persons, which are authorized by **indigenous peoples (local people)** to represent their interests against regional and local authorities and industries regarding socio-economic development within **traditional nature use areas**, protection of original land environment, traditional lifestyles and traditional economic activities of **indigenous peoples**. For a **local community** this could be the head of the local government (samoupravlenie) or persons authorized by a formal community wide gathering of residents (skhod).

**Biological control agents:** Living organisms or products of their activity used to prevent or reduce the damage to the forest by **pests**. BCA make up the basis of **biological control methods of pest management** and are based on the use of entomophagous microorganisms (as bacterial preparations), entomophagous insects, insect feeding birds and mammals.

**Biological control methods of pest management:** The use of living organisms or products of their activity (**biological control agents**) to prevent or reduce the damage to the forest by **pests**. The use of such methods does not lead to environmental pollution and does not adversely affect on humans, plants and forest ecosystems and have continuous after-effect. In some cases, however, may lead to adverse implications, e.g. when using exotic entomophagous insects.

**Certificate:** A document that certifies the conformity of **forest management** practiced by a forest management unit or forest organization to the *FSC Principles and Criteria* and gives the right to label products with a conformity mark.

**Certification:** The procedure by which a certification body gives written assurance that a product, process or service conforms to specified requirements of the *FSC Principles and Criteria*.

**Chemical control methods of pest management:** The use of **pesticides** to prevent or reduce the damage to the forest and timber by **pests, forest diseases**, undesirable plants (weeds) and destroyers

of timber and other raw materials. The wrong and unjustified use of such methods could exert adverse impact on useful flora and fauna (including vertebrate species), ecosystem and humans.

**Clearcut:** Harvesting in a designated area with retention of individual trees and shrubs (groups of trees and shrubs) to ensure **forest regeneration**.

**Confidential information:** Information that cannot be disclosed or made public due to the fact that it:

- contains sensitive information that if made available could harm or even pose a threat to the existence of a site of high conservation value or to interests of indigenous peoples or local communities;
- breaches the existing confidentiality agreements;
- contains information that is subject to existing copyright law and other forms of legal defense, including the intellectual property rights, defense of national security or public order, privacy laws and laws of protection of confidential information; and
- contains information that would affect the applicant's competitiveness (e.g. detailed description of costs, revenues etc.).

**Conversion of forest lands:** Conversion of **forest lands** into other land categories with different management objectives in accordance with the *Land Code* and the *Federal Law on Land Conversion* (e.g. in agricultural lands, urban lands, lands of protected nature areas etc.). In some cases, change of a land category may lead to the irreversible loss of forest cover.

**Customary law:** Rights which result from a long series of habitual or customary actions, constantly repeated, which have, by such repetition and by uninterrupted acquiescence, acquired the force of a law within a geographical or sociological unit. Customary law may be recognized as a legal rule to the extent not in conflict with the effective laws. However, in many cases, while being an effective rule, customary rights are not documented. Customary law refers not to an individual person but a group of people (community), tribe or nation.

**Degraded lands:** Lands which lost their economic values or which have an adverse impact on the environment caused by disturbed soil, hydrological regime and technogenic topography resulted from human activity and other qualitative changes of their state.

**Ecological expertise (ekologicheskaya ekspertiza, EE):** An administrative procedure to **assess** that planned management and other activities conform with environmental requirements and to determine the permissibility of realization of the project under consideration in order to prevent potentially adverse effects of these activities and related social, economic and other consequences.

**Economically accessible forests:** Forests included in the exploitable **forest lands** except **economically inaccessible forests**.

**Economically inaccessible forests:** Forests in the exploitable **forest land** that have low growing stock (50 to 90 cubic meters per hectare depending on a region), deconcentrated harvestable forests (dispersed forest patches less than 25 hectares each within the forest cut down more than 10 years ago), as well as any exploitable forests whose commercial use is unreasonable in given conditions (due to long distance from markets, infeasible harvest and processing, lack of market demand etc.).

**Endangered species:** Any species which is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range or species, which are legally protected in the Russian Federation as a whole or particular administrative regions.

**Endemic species:** Species of plants, animals and fungi, which occur only in this area (region or country) and nowhere globally.

**Exotic (introduced) species:** A species not native to the area in question (especially species from other continents). In this standard this does not apply to **reintroduced species**, i.e. species that historically occurred at the area (e.g. noble broadleaf species that have disappeared from some regions of European Russia) and for which special restoration measures are used.

**Forest areas within lands of other categories:** The forests, which occur within lands of other than **forest land** categories (e.g. agricultural lands, land of settlements). Such forests can be owned by administrative regions of the Russian Federation, local authorities or private organizations.

**Forest diseases:** Pathological processes that are triggered by or develop as a result of activities of pathogens causing infectious diseases (fungi, bacteria, viruses, nematodes, higher flowering plants etc.) and unfavorable environmental factors of natural (droughts, flooding, frost etc.) and anthropogenic (pollution, recreation etc.) character as well as of noninfectious diseases, which cause harm to target functions of forests and forest products.

**Forest inventory:** Annual operative collection and processing of data on the **forest land** of a forest organization, volume and quality of forest operations performed and areas and scope of forestry activity for the next year. In addition, as a rule, once a decade, the forest inventory prepares a **forest management plan (lesokhozaystvenny reglament and a proekt osvoeniya lesov)** based on analysis of the outcomes of economic activities and changes in the **forest land**.

**Forest lands (State Forest Fund):** The totality of forest and non-forest lands constituting the respective land category. The forest lands are federally owned, although powers for their management and use can be passed to administrative regions of the Russian Federation.

**Forest management:** Activities designed for maintenance and use of various forest functions which are carried on in accordance with the current laws and other regulations.

**Forest management unit (FMU):** Either a district level forest management administration unit (lesnichestvo, lesopark) (if the applicant for certification is a government) or an area leased to a particular organization within such a unit (if the applicant is a private leaseholder).

**Forest management plan:** An official document approved by the organization that determines the strategy for use, conservation, protection and regeneration of forest and other resources and a detailed plan of management activities for coming years. The forest management plan is regularly revised. The document contains characteristics of forest resource, calculation and rationale for AAC for leased forest areas, locations of harvest areas by years, description of harvesting techniques, silvicultural operations and road construction activities etc. The FMP is developed on the basis forest inventory materials considering other available materials. Two types of FMP are recognized: **lesokhozyaystvenny reglament** (for a state forest management unit, lesnichestvo) and **proekt osvoeniya lesov** (for leased areas). Other organization's guiding documents (strategies, policies and operating guidelines) also can be considered as part of FMP.

**Forest regeneration (reforestation):** The process and activities following **clearcut** aimed to regenerate forest vegetation dominated by major tree species within the specified timeline. Natural forest regeneration is reforestation, which takes place at a harvested area owing to the presence of natural sources of seed (seed sprouting and vegetating stump and root sprouting) without active involvement of humans, although does not preclude their assistance at the beginning (soil scarification, site fencing). The assistance to natural regeneration may include the use of residual trees and shrubs as well as their groups, considering their condition and suitability. Artificial forest regeneration is reforestation, which is mainly based on artificial sources of reforestation (planting of seeds or trees); the course of its further development is controlled by implementing certain activities. The integrated forest regeneration is reforestation, which combines methods of natural and artificial regeneration when natural sources of seeds are not enough.

**Forest seed base:** A highly productive area of natural high-grade forest or **plantations** made for regular collection of seeds of important tree species with valuable hereditary and sowing qualities for a long time.

**Habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, fungi and animals:** Habitats where occur or potentially may occur **rare, threatened and endangered species** of plants, animals and fungi. In most cases in practice, **key habitats** or **key habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, fungi and animals** are identified and protected.

**Harvest area:** A part of forest area designated for timber harvest.

**HCVF:** See **High conservation value forests**.

**High Conservation Value Forests (HCVF):** Forests that possess one or more of the following attributes:

a) Forest areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant:

- Concentrations of biodiversity values (e.g. endemism, endangered species, refugia); and/or
- Large landscape level forests, contained within, or containing the management unit, where viable populations of most if not all naturally occurring species exist in natural patterns of distribution and abundance (see also **intact forest landscapes**);

b) Forest areas that are in or contain rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems;

c) Forest areas that provide basic services of nature in critical situations (e.g. watershed protection, erosion control);

d) Forest areas fundamental to meeting basic needs of **local communities** (e.g. subsistence, health) and/or critical to **local communities'** traditional cultural identity.

**Indigenous community (obshchina):** A form of self-organization (community) of **indigenous peoples** united by kinship (family, clan) and/or neighborhood relations, which are established to protect their original land environment, protect and develop traditional lifestyles, economic activities, crafts and culture. In this standard this term covers both **indigenous** and **local communities identifying themselves and claiming their rights**. They may be composed of ethnic groups of similar lifestyles.

**Indigenous peoples:** Groups of people, which in the course of many generations, identify themselves as an independent ethno-cultural group (nation, ethnos, ethnic group or ethno-cultural group); linked to a particular geographical region; preserve elements of their lifestyle based on traditional uses of natural resources (integrated management of natural resources, which in different combinations, includes animal husbandry, agriculture, hunting and trapping wildlife and the use of non-timber forest products, which are still of cultural importance for these communities).

**Intact forest landscapes:** Large natural landscapes within the forest zone minimally disturbed by human activities. An intact forest landscape is a landscape greater than 50 thousand hectares in the forest zone that is whole and natural, undivided by infrastructure and almost entirely unaffected by intensive human activities (**clearcutting**, exploitation of mineral resources, forest conversion to agriculture and development, road construction and man-induced stand-replacing fires) during the last 60 years.

**Key habitats (key biotopes, critical habitats):** see **Key habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi**.

**Key habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals or fungi:** Habitats with high number (large populations) of **species** that are **rare, threatened, endangered** species (plants, fungi or invertebrates) and habitats that are critical for lifecycles of vertebrate species (e.g. reproduction, migration, foraging, rest and feeding grounds etc.). In most cases, in practice habitats with the high probability of non-accidental occurrence of **rare, threatened, endangered**, vulnerable and care-demanding species are identified – **key habitats**. Such potential habitats are significantly easier to identify (even for non-specialists) using indirect characteristics such as indicator species (habitats specialists) or biotope characteristics.

**Key stand elements (objects):** Individual trees, their clumps and groups that are the key structures and substratum for **rare, threatened, endangered**, care-demanding and vulnerable to disturbance habitat specialists. Retention of such structures during **clearcuts** (e.g. seed trees of **target species**; some old **non-target** broadleaf trees; trees with large bird nests, large cavity trees; veteran trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy; tree species rare in this area; and large windthrow resistant dying trees and snags) together with preservation of **key habitats** helps to biodiversity conservation in the **cutovers**. At areas with a high groundwater table and in the neighborhood of wetlands it is recommended to leave standing windthrow resistant trees in order to partly preserve the stand transpiration capacity. The residual trees may make up to 10–20% of the pre-harvest growing stock.

**Keystone species (edifiers):** Species, which cause the most significant transformations of the environment. By creating large and lasting population mosaics, such species make habitat conditions suitable for sustainable existence of subordinated species. If the population of a keystone species is removed from the ecosystem, the populations of other species and processes of the ecosystem change dramatically. The good condition of the keystone species is a reliable indicator of the presence of the associated species. Examples of the key species are European bison, which earlier shaped the structure and functioning of temperate hardwood forests, beavers that exert a serious effect on the water regime of the area and large trees of Siberian or Korean pines, and oak, owing to which a complex of associated species can exist in cedar and temperate hardwood forests, respectively.

**Legal rights:** A system of norms, rules and behavior based on the existing laws and regulations.

**Lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament:** A **forest management plan** of a district level forest management administration unit (forestry (lesnichestvo), park forest (lesopark) for a **revision period** (not more than 10 years).

**Local communities (local people or local residents):** People inhabiting a particular area and who reside permanently or at least seasonally in settlements in this area from year to year.

**Long term (said of planning):** The length of time of several revision periods totaling more than a half a rotation for a commercial section or period of long-term lease (at the duration of lease not less than 49 years).



**Management unit** (with respect to forest resource: A set of **management sections** that have similar management objectives (coniferous, noble hardwoods, other hardwoods).

**Mimicking (imitation) of natural dynamics of the forest (during harvesting):** The system of adaptive forest management according to which the choice of harvesting techniques shall strive to mimic the natural dynamics of a particular forest type and take into account composition and structure. For example, when harvesting in even-aged dark (spruce and fir) coniferous, temperate coniferous–broadleaf and temperate hardwood forests, which develop in the absence of fires (stand-replacing disturbance), the preference shall be given to **selection cuts**. In variants of dark coniferous stands with expressed tree generations, some **shelterwood (multistage) cuts** and small-size **clearcuts** can be used. (Note that broadleaf trees here mean noble broadleaf species like oak, ash, maple, elm and linden.) Within the framework of this approach it is not recommended to imitate natural catastrophic events, such as catastrophic stand-replacing fires. Therefore, the rationale for the use of **clearcut** shall be provided and the harvesting shall include measure on biodiversity conservation. Thus, in coniferous and coniferous–broadleaf stands with fire dynamics, seed trees in number sufficient to provide natural regeneration, pole-size trees, **key stand elements** and **key habitats** (e.g. small bogs, forest strips along the streams etc.) shall be retained.

**Narrow clear-strip cut: Clearcut** made in strips less than 100 m wide.

**Non-exploitable areas (NEP):** Designated areas within the designed harvest areas, which are not subject to timber harvest because of silvicultural, economic or environmental considerations. Such areas may include non-forest patches (bogs, clearcuts, openings in the forest etc.); seed clumps and strips; patches of young, middle-aged and undermature stands dispersed among mature stands; as well as areas, which shall be protected in order to preserve natural objects of high conservation value, biodiversity (**key habitats, key stand elements**) and forest environment. NEPs can be also designated during timber harvest if such areas had been overlooked earlier.

**Non-target species:** Species which have no commercial value under particular management objectives.

**Other categories of cuts: Clearcuts** made irrespectively of stand age in order to clear out the **forest lands** for various management purposes.

**Outstanding disputes (of substantial magnitude involving a significant number of interests):**

An open conflict or dispute, which is characterized by confrontational points of view that involves:

- local rights holders, local forest workers, or local residents;
- the **legal or customary (or traditional) rights** of **local communities** and **indigenous communities**;
- a range of issues and/or interests;
- potential impacts to the disputant(s) that are irreversible or cannot be mitigated; and
- are related to meeting the FSC Standards.

**OVOS (Environmental impact assessment):** A procedure to reveal, analyze and take into account direct, indirect and other negative impacts on the environment of planned management and other activities in order to make decision whether they are permissible or not. According to Criterion 6.1 of Checklist of this standard, OVOS is a procedure different from OVOS procedure provided for in the Law on Environmental Expertise and Order of the State Committee for Environment Protection of the Russian Federation *On Adopting Regulations for Assessing the Environment Impact Caused by Planned Management and Other Activities in the Russian Federation* of May 16, 2000, No. 372. Along with these procedures, an organization may use said regulatory documents in order to develop its own OVOS procedure. The findings of OVOS may be presented in the form offered by the Order (see p.86).

**OZU (Special protection forest habitats):** Forest sites that perform significant protective functions or have special management functions with management restrictions. OZU are identified in **protective**, exploitable and reserved forests. **Clearcuts** in OZU are, as a rule, prohibited.

**Pesticides (chemical control agents):** Chemical or biological synthetic preparations used to control/kill phytophagous animals (**pests**) and **forest diseases**, undesirable plants (weeds), wood and other plant materials destroying pests Pesticides are the main tool of **chemical** control methods of pest management. Pesticides include insecticides, which kill insects, acaricides (for ticks), fungicides (for fungal diseases), bactericides (for bacterial diseases), herbicides (for plants) etc.

**Pests:** Animals (insects, ticks, ungulates, rodents and others), whose activity may lead to reduced increments and fruit-bearing of plants, to disturbance of plant regeneration and growth, to decline and death of trees and shrubs and to damage of forest products (mainly timber). Massive pest outbreaks an uncontrolled expansion of vertebrates may exert a serious adverse impact on forestry and forest management or entail the depleting of forest resources accessible for the man. Such organisms are often considered harmful, which is not entirely correct, as insects (besides **exotic** ones) constitute a typical component of natural forest ecosystems and provide maintenance of their natural development cycles.

**Plantations:** A comparatively large area of human-made stands designed for accelerated growth of trees and shrubs to produce timber products with specific technical characteristics. The priority in plantation forestry is given to economic and technical characteristics. An area of stands of natural origin treated with intensive improvement cuttings or other operations aimed at changing their structure to yield merchantable wood of relevant assortments is classified as plantations.

**Proekt osvoeniya lesov:** A **forest management plan** of a lease area for a period of the lease, including a detailed plan of management activities for coming years (usually 10 years). POL is developed on the basis of **lesokhozyaystvenny reglament**.

**Protected sites:** For the purpose of this standard, forest areas where forest management is legally restricted depending on their high conservation values or such areas that are in process of acquiring a relevant status or such areas for which there is a voluntary documented long-term commitment by the organization to observe the relevant management restrictions. Such areas may include existing and candidate protected areas, important bird areas of Russia, existing and candidate Ramsar wetlands, **protective forests**, **OZU**, legal plans of ecological network as well as any areas voluntary set aside for conservation by the organization (e.g. **HCVF** or **representative samples of existing ecosystems** having no legal status).

**Protection forests:** legal categories of forests, whose ecological and/or social importance is higher than economical one. The main purpose of such forests is to ensure conservation and maintenance of biodiversity and to perform ecosystem functions and services (protection of water and forest resources, maintaining human health and hygienic functions etc.). Therefore, management activities in such forest are restricted depending on their conservation value and functions. Forests receive a legal protective status during state forest inventories.

**Rare species:** Species of plants, animals and fungi with small numbers of individuals in a particular administrative region of the Russian Federation, region, country or globally due to different reasons (e.g. natural peculiarities or historical reasons).

**Rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems:** Ecosystems that are rare (i.e. occupies insignificant fraction of a particular landscape, region, natural zone or globally) due to various reasons (e.g. uniqueness of natural development or human activity). Therefore, rare ecosystems are generally vulnerable (threatened or endangered), i.e. can be totally lost as a result of a wide array destructive factors and even insignificant disturbance. There are no commonly accepted criteria to referring ecosystems to rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems.

**Reintroduced species:** See **Exotic species**.

**Relic species:** All plants, fungi, animals, which have preserved in an area since ancient times, when climate and environmental conditions were different in comparison to present.

**Representative samples of existing ecosystems:** A network of functionally interrelated protected sites, which provide conservation of flora and fauna, landscapes, ecosystems and habitats in applicant's the area. In practice, this means that such a network shall:

- include all types of ecosystems and landscapes occurring in the area (i.e. be representative);
- promote preservation of regionally and locally **rare, threatened or endangered** types of **ecosystems** and landscapes;
- ensure settling and migration of species; and
- serve a base for scientific research of natural processes in forests.

Functions of representative samples of existing ecosystems may perform existing protected areas and candidate areas, **protective forests**, relatively large **OZU**, including and voluntarily set aside forest areas (e.g. HCVF).

**Rotation period:** A period of time between two consecutive **clearcuts**. If reforestation in a **harvest area** is carried out in the year following the **clearcut**, the rotation period and the age of **clearcut** are the same. If reforestation is carried out some years later, the rotation period exceeds the age of **clearcut** by the respective number of years. If viable undergrowth remains in a harvested area, the rotation period is less than the age of **clearcut** by the age of remained undergrowth.

**Secondary forest uses:** Includes hay cutting, animal grazing, keeping beehives, collection of tree sap, wild fruits, berries, nuts and mushrooms and other food, medicinal and technical raw materials, moss, forest litter, reed etc.

**Selection cut:** A timber harvesting method at which part of trees of certain age, size, quality and/or condition is periodically felled down.

**Shelterwood (multistage) cuts:** Harvest of a mature stand, which involves a series of cuts over several decades (during one or two age classes) in a harvest area, encouraging immediate or subsequent forest regeneration by leaving old, second-layer and young trees. Some stages of shelterwood cuts can look as **clearcuts (narrow-strip cuts)**, while others as **selection cuts** (single tree selection, group (patch) selection, as well as long-rotation multistage cuts).

**Short term (said of planning):** The length of time less than one revision period (10 years).

**Silvicultural operations:** Technical and organizational forest management activities designed for the harvesting of timber, the construction of roads and trails for forest management purposes, growing, regeneration and protection of exploitable and **protection forests**, increasing their productivity and enhancing their protective attributes.

**Special protection forest habitats:** see **OZU**.

**Stakeholder:** An individual or organization whose economic, social, spiritual or conservation-oriented interests can be positively or negatively affected as a result of **forest management**. The stakeholder may also influence the preparation for **certification** and its results.

**Target species:** Tree species grown for the purpose of commercial harvesting.

**Threatened species:** Species whose numbers are permanently declining so that it is likely to become **endangered species (or extinct)** in the foreseeable future or species which are under protection within the Russian Federation or its particular administrative regions

**Traditional nature use areas of Indigenous Small-Numbered Peoples of the North, Siberia and Far East of the Russian Federation:** According to the Federal Law on *Traditional Nature Use Areas of Small-numbered Indigenous Nations of the North, Siberia and the Far East of the Russian Federation* of May 7, 2001. No. 49-FZ (D), these are protected areas established for maintaining traditional land uses and traditional lifestyles of small-numbered indigenous nations of the North, Siberia and the Russian Far East. Such areas may be legally established by federal, regional and local authorities. TNUA can be divided into the following zones:

- settlements, including those of temporal use and with changeable population, permanent dwellings, villages, stops of reindeer herders, hunters and fishermen;
- parcels of land and waters used for traditional nature use and traditional lifestyles, including reindeer pastures, hunting and other grounds, sea areas used for fishing, see hunting and collection of wild growing plants;

### Russian National FSC Standard

- historic and cultural heritage sites, including cult objects, places of ancient settling or burial grounds of ancestors and other sites of cultural, historic and religious significance; and
- other parts of TNUA permitted by the legislation of the Russian Federation and its administrative regions.

**Traditional rights:** A variant of **customary law**. Originally traditional rights is composed of traditional legal customs and legal systems common in “non-state” societies and being in effect nowadays. The custom becomes a norm after it has been recognized as such by a known ethnic group, tribe etc.

**Traditional use of natural resources:** A specific integrated system for management of natural resources, which in different combinations, includes animal husbandry, agriculture, hunting and trapping wildlife and the use of non-timber forest products, which are still of cultural importance for **indigenous communities**.

**Umbrella species:** Species highly demanding to their habitats (large area, special conditions for migration, specific food resources etc.), which require a large area containing many types of habitats to sustain a viable population. Therefore, requirements of an umbrella species overlap with the requirements of many other species. By securing a large enough tract of land to sustain a viable population of these species, many others will come under the same protection. The examples of umbrella species are large predators (e.g. wolf, brown bear) and hoofed animals with large home ranges (e.g. forest reindeer).

**Water protection zones:** Protective riparian zones along the rivers, lakes, reservoirs and other water bodies that have a special regime of management and management restrictions to prevent pollution, littering, silting and exhaustion of water bodies as well as to protect habitats of plants and animals. It is established in accordance with the Water Code of the Russian Federation.

**Wide clear-strip cut: Clearcut** made in strips more than 100 m wide; it is considered large if the actual cutting area is greater than 10 ha.

**Russian National FSC Standard**  
**Annex H. Certification Terms**

**Definitions of the terms below are taken from the *FSC Glossary of Terms* (2000). They are cited here to explain better terms used in the FSC Standards.**

**Criterion:** A means of judging whether or not a Principle (of Forest Management) has been fulfilled.

**Forest Stewardship Standard:** The normative document which specifies the requirements with which a forest management organization must conform in order to obtain FSC certification. Such a standard must include the exact language of the *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship*, together with the additional indicators necessary to permit implementation at the level of the forest management unit.

**FSC Principles and Criteria:** The 10 Principles and 56 associated Criteria specified in the document *FSC Principles and Criteria of Forest Stewardship* (2002).

**Indicator:** A quantitative or qualitative variable which can be measured or described and which provides a means of judging whether a forest management unit complies with the requirements of an FSC Criterion. Indicators and the associated thresholds thereby define the requirements for responsible forest management at the level of the forest management unit and are the primary basis of forest evaluation.

**Means of verification:** A potential source of information or evidence that allows an auditor to evaluate compliance with an indicator

**Non-compliance with a Forest Stewardship Standard:** Failure to meet the threshold requirement(s) of an indicator of a Forest Stewardship Standard. Such non-compliance may be considered “minor” or “major”:

**Minor non-compliance with a Forest Stewardship Standard:** A non-compliance may be considered minor if:

- it is a temporary lapse, or
- it is unusual/ non-systematic, or
- the impacts of the non-compliance are limited in their temporal and spatial scale, and
- prompt corrective action has been taken to ensure that it will not be repeated, and
- it does not result in a fundamental failure to achieve the objective of the relevant FSC Criterion.

**Major non-compliance with a Forest Stewardship Standard:** A non-compliance shall be considered major if, either alone or in combination with further non-compliances of other indicators, it results in, or is likely to result in a fundamental failure to achieve the objective of the relevant FSC Criterion in the Forest Management Unit(s) within the scope of the evaluation. Such fundamental failure shall be indicated by non-compliances which:

- continue over a long period of time, or,
- are repeated or systematic, or
- affect a wide area, or
- are not corrected or adequately responded to by the forest managers once they have been identified.

**Principle:** An essential rule or element; in FSC's case, of forest stewardship.